

# ANALYSIS & PDE

Volume 1

No. 2

2008

**MICROLOCAL PROPAGATION NEAR RADIAL POINTS AND  
SCATTERING FOR SYMBOLIC POTENTIALS OF ORDER ZERO**

ANDREW HASSELL, RICHARD MELROSE AND ANDRÁS VASY



mathematical sciences publishers



## MICROLOCAL PROPAGATION NEAR RADIAL POINTS AND SCATTERING FOR SYMBOLIC POTENTIALS OF ORDER ZERO

ANDREW HASSELL, RICHARD MELROSE AND ANDRÁS VASY

In this paper, the scattering and spectral theory of  $H = \Delta_g + V$  is developed, where  $\Delta_g$  is the Laplacian with respect to a scattering metric  $g$  on a compact manifold  $X$  with boundary and  $V \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(X)$  is real; this extends our earlier results in the two-dimensional case. Included in this class of operators are perturbations of the Laplacian on Euclidean space by potentials homogeneous of degree zero near infinity. Much of the particular structure of geometric scattering theory can be traced to the occurrence of radial points for the underlying classical system. In this case the radial points correspond precisely to critical points of the restriction,  $V_0$ , of  $V$  to  $\partial X$  and under the additional assumption that  $V_0$  is Morse a functional parameterization of the generalized eigenfunctions is obtained.

The main subtlety of the higher dimensional case arises from additional complexity of the radial points. A normal form near such points obtained by Guillemin and Schaeffer is extended and refined, allowing a microlocal description of the null space of  $H - \sigma$  to be given for all but a finite set of “threshold” values of the energy; additional complications arise at the discrete set of “effectively resonant” energies. It is shown that each critical point at which the value of  $V_0$  is less than  $\sigma$  is the source of solutions of  $Hu = \sigma u$ . The resulting description of the generalized eigenspaces is a rather precise, distributional, formulation of asymptotic completeness. We also derive the closely related  $L^2$  and time-dependent forms of asymptotic completeness, including the absence of  $L^2$  channels associated with the nonminimal critical points. This phenomenon, observed by Herbst and Skibsted, can be attributed to the fact that the eigenfunctions associated to the nonminimal critical points are “large” at infinity; in particular they are too large to lie in the range of the resolvent  $R(\sigma \pm i0)$  applied to compactly supported functions.

1. Introduction	128
2. Radial points	135
3. Microlocal normal form	140
4. Microlocal solutions	155
5. Test modules	157
6. Effectively nonresonant operators	165
7. Effectively resonant operators	174
8. From microlocal to approximate eigenfunctions	177
9. Microlocal Morse decomposition	179
10. $L^2$ -parameterization of the generalized eigenspaces	181

*MSC2000*: primary 35P25; secondary 81U99.

*Keywords*: radial point, scattering metric, degree zero potential, asymptotics of generalized eigenfunctions, microlocal Morse decomposition, asymptotic completeness.

Hassell was supported in part by an Australian Research Council Fellowship. Melrose was supported in part by the National Science Foundation under grant #DMS-0408993. Vasy was supported in part by the National Science Foundation under grant #DMS-0201092, a Clay Research Fellowship and a Fellowship from the Alfred P. Sloan Foundation.

11. Time-dependent Schrödinger equation	186
Appendix: Errata for [Hassell et. al 2004]	193
Acknowledgement	195
References	195

### 1. Introduction

In this paper, which is a continuation of [Hassell et al. 2004] (sometimes referred to as Part I) scattering theory is developed for symbolic potentials of order zero. The general setting is the same as in Part I, consisting of a compact manifold with boundary,  $X$ , equipped with a scattering metric,  $g$ , and a real potential,  $V \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(X)$ . Recall that such a scattering metric on  $X$  is a smooth metric in the interior of  $X$  taking the form

$$g = \frac{dx^2}{x^4} + \frac{h}{x^2} \tag{1-1}$$

near the boundary, where  $x$  is a boundary defining function and  $h$  is a smooth cotensor which restricts to a metric on  $\{x = 0\} = \partial X$ . This makes the interior,  $X^\circ$ , of  $X$  a complete manifold which is asymptotically flat and is metrically asymptotic to the large end of a cone, since in terms of the singular normal coordinate  $r = x^{-1}$ , the leading part of the metric at the boundary takes the form  $dr^2 + r^2h(y, dy)$ . In the compactification of  $X^\circ$  to  $X$ ,  $\partial X$  corresponds to the set of asymptotic directions of geodesics. In particular, this setting subsumes the case of the standard metric on Euclidean space, or a compactly supported perturbation of it, with a potential which is a classical symbol of order zero, hence not decaying at infinity but rather with leading term which is asymptotically homogeneous of degree zero. The study of the scattering theory for such potentials was initiated by Herbst [1991].

Let  $V_0 \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\partial X)$  be the restriction of  $V$  to  $\partial X$ , and denote by  $Cv(V)$  the set of critical values of  $V_0$ . It is shown in [Hassell et al. 2004] that the operator  $H = \Delta_g + V$  (where the Laplacian is normalized to be positive) is essentially self-adjoint with continuous spectrum occupying  $[\min V_0, \infty)$ . There may be discrete spectrum of finite multiplicity in  $(-\min_X V, \max V_0]$  with possible accumulation points only at  $Cv(V)$ . To obtain finer results, it is natural to assume, as we do throughout this paper unless otherwise noted, that  $V_0$  is a Morse function, that is, has only nondegenerate critical points; in particular  $Cv(V)$  is then a finite set; by definition this is the set of *threshold energies*, or *thresholds*.

From the microlocal point of view scattering theory is largely about the study of radial points, that is, the points in the cotangent bundle where the Hamilton vector field is a multiple of the radial vector field (that is, the vector field  $A = \sum_i z_i \partial_{z_i}$  on Euclidean space, where  $(z_1, \dots, z_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ). These correspond in the classical dynamical system to the places where the particle is moving either in purely incoming or outgoing sense. In scattering theory for potentials decaying at infinity, there is a radial point for each point on the sphere at infinity; thus there is a manifold of radial points and the behaviour of the flow in a neighbourhood of these points is rather simple, either attracting (at the outgoing radial surface) or repelling (at the incoming radial surface) in the transverse direction. Estimates involving commutation with the radial vector field  $A$  multiplied by suitable powers of  $|z|$  and perhaps additional microlocalizing operators, are usually sufficient to control the behaviour of generalized eigenfunctions. These are known as Mourre-type estimates and play a fundamental role in conventional scattering theory. In the present case, assuming  $V_0$  is a Morse function, the radial points are isolated and occur in pairs, one pair (incoming/outgoing) for each

critical point of  $V_0$ . The linearized Hamiltonian flow at the radial points is rather more complicated since it depends on the Hessian of  $V_0$  at the critical point, which is arbitrary apart from being nondegenerate. This makes the higher dimensional case more intricate than the case  $\dim X = 2$  which we treated in [Hassell et al. 2004]. Correspondingly one needs more elaborate commutator estimates in order to control the behaviour of generalized eigenfunctions. We give a rather general and complete analysis of the regularity of solutions of  $Pu = 0$  in a microlocal neighbourhood of a radial point of  $P$ , using the concept of a test module of operators. This is a family of pseudodifferential operators which is a module over the zero-order operators, contains  $P$ , and is closed under commutation. By choosing a test module closely tailored to the Hamilton flow of  $P$  near the radial point we are able to produce enough positive-commutator estimates to parametrize the microlocal solutions of  $Pu = 0$ . The construction of appropriate test modules (which can be thought of as simply an effective bookkeeping device for keeping track of a rather intricate set of commutator estimates) to analyze general radial points is the main technical innovation of this paper.

The general study of radial points was initiated by Guillemin and Schaeffer [1977]. This was done in a slightly different context, where  $P$  is a standard pseudodifferential operator with homogeneous principal symbol and a radial point is one where the Hamilton vector field is a multiple of the vector field  $\sum_i \xi_i \partial_{\xi_i}$  generating dilations in the cotangent space. This setting is completely equivalent to ours, via conjugation by a “local Fourier Transform” (see Section 3.1). They analyzed the situation in the nonresonant case. We refine their analysis by treating the resonant case, which is crucial in our application since we have a family of operators parametrized by the energy level, and the closure of the set of energies which give rise to resonant radial points may have nonempty interior. Moreover, we show that our parametrization of microlocal solutions is smooth except at a set of “effectively resonant” energies which is always discrete.

Bony, Fujiie, Ramond and Zerzeri [Bony et al. 2007] have studied the microlocal kernel of pseudodifferential operators at a hyperbolic fixed point, corresponding, in our setting, to a radial point associated to a local maximum of  $V_0$ . Their results partially overlap ours, being most closely related to [Hassell et al. 2004, Section 10] and [Hassell et al. 2001].

**1.1. Previous results.** The Euclidean setting described above was first studied by Herbst [1991], who showed that any finite energy solution of the time dependent Schrödinger equation, so  $u = e^{-itH} f$  with  $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , can concentrate, in an  $L^2$  sense, asymptotically as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  only in directions which are critical points of  $V_0$ . This was subsequently refined by Herbst and Skibsted [2008], who showed that such concentration can only occur near local minima of  $V_0$ . In contrast, solutions of the classical flow can concentrate near any critical point of  $V_0$ .

Asymptotic completeness has been studied by Agmon, Cruz and Herbst [1999], by Herbst and Skibsted [1999; 2008; 2004] and the present authors in [Hassell et al. 2004]. Agmon, Cruz and Herbst showed asymptotic completeness for sufficiently high energies, while Herbst and Skibsted extended this to all energies except for an explicitly given union of bounded intervals; in the two dimensional case, they showed asymptotic completeness for all energies. These results were obtained by time-dependent methods. On the other hand the principal result of [Hassell et al. 2004] involves a precise description of the generalized eigenspaces of  $H$

$$E^{-\infty}(\sigma) = \{u \in \mathcal{C}^{-\infty}(X); (H - \sigma)u = 0\};$$

note that the space of “extendible distributions”  $\mathcal{C}^{-\infty}(X)$  is the analogue of tempered distributions

and reduces to it in case  $X$  is the radial compactification of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Thus we are studying all *tempered* eigenfunctions of  $H$ . Let us recall these results in more detail.

For any  $\sigma \notin \text{Cv}(V)$  the space  $E_{\text{pp}}(\sigma)$  of  $L^2$  eigenfunctions is finite dimensional, and reduces to zero except for  $\sigma$  in a discrete (possibly empty) subset of  $[\min_X V, \max V_0] \setminus \text{Cv}(V)$ . It is always the case that  $E_{\text{pp}}(\sigma) \subset \dot{C}^\infty(X)$  consists of rapidly decreasing functions. Hence  $E_{\text{ess}}^{-\infty}(\sigma) \subset E^{-\infty}(\sigma)$ , the orthocomplement of  $E_{\text{pp}}(\sigma)$ , is well defined for  $\sigma \notin \text{Cv}(V)$ . Furthermore, as shown in the Euclidean case by Herbst [1991], the resolvent,  $R(\sigma)$  of  $H$ , acting on this orthocomplement, has a limit,  $R(\sigma \pm i0)$ , on  $[\min V_0, \infty) \setminus \text{Cv}(V)$  from above and below. The subspace of “smooth” eigenfunctions is then defined as

$$E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma) = \text{Sp}(\sigma) (\dot{C}^\infty(X) \ominus E_{\text{pp}}(\sigma)) \subset E^{-\infty}(\sigma), \quad \text{Sp}(\sigma) \equiv \frac{1}{2\pi i} (R(\sigma + i0) - R(\sigma - i0)). \quad (1-2)$$

In fact

$$E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma) \subset \bigcap_{\epsilon > 0} x^{-1/2-\epsilon} L^2(X).$$

An alternative characterization of  $E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma)$  can be given in terms of the *scattering wavefront set* at the boundary of  $X$ .

The scattering cotangent bundle,  ${}^{\text{sc}}T^*X$ , of  $X$  is naturally isomorphic to the cotangent bundle over the interior of  $X$ , and indeed globally isomorphic to  $T^*X$  by a nonnatural isomorphism; the natural identification exhibits both “compression” and “rescaling” at the boundary. If  $(x, y)$  are local coordinates near a boundary point of  $X$ , with  $x$  a boundary defining function, then linear coordinates  $(\nu, \mu)$  are defined on the scattering cotangent bundle by requiring that  $q \in {}^{\text{sc}}T^*X$  be written as

$$q = -\nu \frac{dx}{x^2} + \sum_i \mu_i \frac{dy_i}{x}, \quad \nu \in \mathbb{R}, \quad \mu \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1}. \quad (1-3)$$

This makes  $(\nu, \mu)$  dual to the basis  $(-x^2 \partial_x, x \partial_{y_i})$  of vector fields which form an approximately unit length basis, uniformly up to the boundary, for any scattering metric. In Euclidean space,  $\nu$  is dual to  $\partial_r$  and  $\mu_i$  is dual to the constant-length angular derivative  $r^{-1} \partial_{y_i}$ . In the analysis of the microlocal aspects of  $H - \sigma$ , in part for compatibility with [Guillemin and Schaeffer 1977], it is convenient pass to an operator “of first order” by multiplying  $H - \sigma$  by  $x^{-1}$ , that is, to replace it by

$$P = P(\sigma) = x^{-1}(H - \sigma).$$

The classical dynamical system giving the behaviour of particles, asymptotically near  $\partial X$ , moving under the influence of the potential corresponds to “the bicharacteristic vector field,” see (2–3), determined by the *boundary symbol*,  $p$ , of  $P$ . This vector field is defined on  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$ , which is to say on  ${}^{\text{sc}}T^*X$  at, and tangent to, the boundary  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X = {}^{\text{sc}}T^*X \cap \{x = 0\}$ . It has the property that  $\nu$  is nondecreasing under the flow; we refer to points  $(y, \nu, \mu)$  where  $\mu = 0$  as *incoming* if  $\nu < 0$  and *outgoing* if  $\nu > 0$ . What is important in understanding the behaviour of the null space of  $P$ , that is, tempered distributions,  $u$ , satisfying  $Pu = 0$ , is bicharacteristic flow inside  $\{p = 0, x = 0\}$ , a submanifold to which it is tangent. The only critical points of the flow are at points  $(y, \nu, 0)$  where  $y$  is a critical point of  $P$  and  $\nu = \pm \sqrt{\sigma - V(y)}$ . Thus, the only possible asymptotic escape directions of classical particles under the influence of the potential  $V$  are the finite number of critical points of  $V_0$ . Moreover, only the local minima are stable; the others have unstable directions according to the number of unstable directions as a critical point of  $V_0 : \partial X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ .

The classical dynamics of  $p$  and the quantum dynamics of  $P$  are linked via the scattering wavefront set. Let  $u \in C^{-\infty}(X)$  be a tempered distribution on  $X$  (that is, in the dual space of  $\dot{C}^\infty(X; \Omega)$ ). The part of the scattering wavefront set,  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u)$ , of  $u$  lying over the boundary  $\{x = 0\}$ , which is all that is of interest here, is a closed subset of  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$  which measures the linear oscillations (Fourier modes, in the case of Euclidean space) present in  $u$  asymptotically near boundary points; see [Melrose 1994] for the precise definition. We shall also need to use the scattering wavefront set  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}^s(u)$  with respect to the space  $x^s L^2(X)$  which measures the microlocal regions where  $u$  fails to be in  $x^s L^2(X)$ . There is a propagation theorem for the scattering wavefront set in the style of the theorem of Hörmander in the standard setting; if  $Pu \in \dot{C}^\infty(X)$ , then the scattering wavefront set of  $u$  is contained in  $\{p = 0\}$  and is invariant under the bicharacteristic flow of  $P$ ; see [Melrose 1994]. In particular, generalized eigenfunctions of  $u$  have scattering wavefront set invariant under the bicharacteristic flow of  $P$ . Note that the elliptic part of this statement is already a uniform version of the smoothness of solutions.

In view of this propagation theorem, it is possible to consider where generalized eigenfunctions “originate”, although the direction of propagation is fixed by convention. Let us say that a generalized eigenfunction *originates* at a radial point  $q$ , if  $q \in \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u)$  and if  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u)$  is contained in the forward flowout  $\Phi_+(q)$  of  $q$ ; thus each point in  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u)$  can be reached from  $q$  by travelling along curves that are everywhere tangent to the flow and with  $\nu$  nondecreasing along the curve, so allowing the possibility of passing through radial points, where the flow vanishes, on the way. In Part I of this paper we showed, in the two-dimensional case and provided the eigenvalue  $\sigma$  is a nonthreshold value:

- Every  $L^2$  eigenfunction is in  $\dot{C}^\infty(X)$ .
- Every nontrivial generalized eigenfunction pairing to zero with the  $L^2$  eigenspace fails to be in  $x^{-1/2}L^2(X)$ .
- There are generalized eigenfunctions originating at each of the incoming radial points in  $\{p = 0\}$ , that is, at each critical point of  $V_0$  with value less than  $\sigma$ .
- There are fundamental differences between the behaviour of eigenfunctions near a local minimum and at other critical points. The radial point corresponding to a local minimum is always an isolated point of the scattering wavefront set for some nontrivial eigenfunction. For other critical points, the scattering wavefront set necessarily propagates and in generic situations each nontrivial generalized eigenfunction is singular at some minimal radial point.
- A generalized eigenfunction,  $u$ , with an isolated point in its scattering wavefront set, necessarily a radial point corresponding to a local minimum of  $V_0$ , has a complete asymptotic expansion there. The expansion is determined by its leading term, which is a Schwartz function of  $n - 1$  variables. The resulting map extends by continuity to an injective map from  $E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma)$  into  $\bigoplus_q L^2(\mathbb{R}^{n-1})$ , where the direct sum is over local minima of  $V_0$  with value less than the energy  $\sigma$ .
- The space  $E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)$ , consisting of those generalized eigenfunctions which are in  $x^{-1/2}L^2$  microlocally near  $\{\nu = 0\}$ , is a Hilbert space and the map above extends to a unitary isomorphism,  $M_+(\sigma)$ , from  $E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)$  to  $\bigoplus_q L^2(\mathbb{R}^{n-1})$ . A similar map  $M_-(\sigma)$  can be defined by reversal of sign or complex conjugation and the scattering matrix for  $P = P(\sigma)$  at energy  $\sigma$  may be written

$$S(\sigma) = M_+(\sigma)M_-^{-1}(\sigma).$$

In this paper we extend these results to higher dimensions.

**1.2. Results and structure of the paper.** We treat this problem by microlocal methods. Thus, the “classical” system, consisting of the bicharacteristic vector field, plays a dominant role. The main step involves reducing this vector field to an appropriate normal form in a neighbourhood of each of its zeroes, which are just the radial points. Nondegeneracy of the critical points of  $V_0$  implies nondegeneracy of the linearization of the bicharacteristic vector field at the corresponding radial points. If there are no resonances, Sternberg’s Linearization Theorem, following an argument of Guillemin and Schaeffer, allows the bicharacteristic vector field to be reduced to its linearization by a contact transformation of  ${}^{sc}T_{\partial X}^*X$ . At the quantum level this means that conjugation by a (scattering) Fourier integral operator, associated to this contact transformation, microlocally replaces  $P$  by an operator with principal symbol in normal form. For this normal form we construct “test modules” of pseudodifferential operators and analyze the commutators with the transformed operator. Modulo lower order terms, the operator itself becomes a quadratic combination of elements of the test module. Just as in Part I, we use the resulting system of regularity constraints to determine the microlocal structure of the eigenfunctions and ultimately show the existence of asymptotic expansions for eigenfunctions with some additional regularity.

However, the problem of resonances cannot be avoided. Even for a fixed operator and fixed critical point, the closure of the set of values of  $\sigma$  for which resonances occur may have nonempty interior. Such resonances prevent the reduction of the bicharacteristic vector field to its linearization, and hence of the symbol of  $P$  to an associated model, although partial reductions are still possible. In general it is necessary to allow many more terms in the model. Fortunately most of these terms are not relevant to the construction of the test modules and to the derivation of the asymptotic expansions. We distinguish between “effectively nonresonant” energies, where the additional resonant terms are such that the definition of the test modules, now only to finite order, proceeds much as before and the “effectively resonant” energies, where this is not the case. Ultimately, we analyze the regularity of solutions at all (nonthreshold) energies. Near effectively nonresonant energies, smoothness of families of eigenfunctions may still be readily shown. Effectively resonant energies are harder to analyze, but the set of these is shown to be *discrete*. In any case, the space of microlocal eigenfunctions is parameterized at all nonthreshold energies. At effectively resonant energies the problems arising from the failure of the direct analogue of Sternberg’s linearization are overcome by showing that, to an appropriate finite order, the operator may be reduced to a nonquadratic function of the test module.

In outline, the discussion proceeds as follows. In Sections 2–4 we study radial points. This is a general microlocal study except that we work under the assumption that the symplectic map associated to the linearization of the flow at each radial point (see Lemma 2.5) has no 4-dimensional irreducible invariant subspaces; this assumption is always fulfilled in the case of our operator  $\Delta + V - \sigma$ . The main result is Theorem 3.11 in which the operator is microlocally conjugated to a linear vector field plus certain “error terms”. In the nonresonant case the error terms can be made to vanish identically, while in the effectively nonresonant case the error terms have a good property with respect to a test module of pseudodifferential operators, namely they can be expressed as a positive power  $x^\epsilon$ ,  $\epsilon > 0$ , times a power of the module. In the effectively resonant case this is no longer possible and we must allow “genuinely” resonant terms, but the set of effectively resonant energies is discrete in the parameter  $\sigma$  in all dimensions.

We then turn in Sections 5–7 to studying microlocal eigenfunctions which are microlocally outgoing at a given radial point  $q$ . The main result here is Theorem 6.7 (or Theorem 7.3 in the effectively resonant case) which gives a parameterization of such microlocal eigenfunctions. For a minimal radial point, they



are parameterized by  $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{n-1})$ , Schwartz functions of  $n - 1$  variables, for a maximal radial point they are parameterized by formal power series in  $n - 1$  variables, and in the intermediate case of a saddle point with  $k$  positive directions, they are parameterized by formal power series in  $n - 1 - k$  variables with values in  $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^k)$ . In all cases, the parameterizing data appear explicitly in the asymptotic expansion of the eigenfunction at the critical point.

We next investigate in Sections 8 and 9 the manner in which the various radial points interact, and prove, in Theorem 9.2, a “microlocal Morse decomposition.” This shows that for each nonthreshold energy  $\sigma$  there are genuine eigenfunctions (as opposed to microlocal eigenfunctions) in  $E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma)$  associated to each energy-permissible critical point.

Then we turn in Sections 10 and 11 to the spectral decomposition of  $P$  and prove several versions of asymptotic completeness. First this is established at a fixed, nonthreshold energy; see Theorem 10.1 which shows that the natural map from  $E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)$  to the leading term in its asymptotic expansion (that is, to its parameterizing data) is unitary. Next we prove a form valid uniformly over an interval of the spectrum, Theorem 10.10. In Section 11 a time-dependent formulation is derived, as Theorem 11.4. This is based on the behaviour at large times of solutions of the time-dependent Schrödinger equation  $D_t u = Pu$  and is subsequently used to derive a result of Herbst and Skibsted’s on the absence of  $L^2$ -channels corresponding to nonminimal critical points (Corollary 11.7).

**1.3. Results used from [Hassell et al. 2004].** Throughout this paper we state the specific location of results used from [Hassell et al. 2004] (Part I). For the convenience of the reader we summarize here the relevant locations. Sections 1–3 of Part I are used as the basic background (and Section 3 of Part I relies on Section 4 there). The present Section 4 is the analogue of Section 5 of Part I, although we restate many of the arguments due to the slightly different (more general) setting. The basic analytic technique using test modules in Section 5 comes from Section 6 of Part I. Certain results and methods from Sections 11 and 12 of Part I are used here in Sections 9 and 10. However, the results of the intermediate Sections 7–10 of Part I, while certainly of interest when comparing to the results of Sections 6 and 7 here, are never used in the present work directly or indirectly.

In addition, there was an error in the proof of Proposition 6.7 of Part I. While this error is minor and is easily remedied, we present the modified proof, together with some of the context, here in the Appendix since this proposition lies at the heart of the analysis in both papers.

**1.4. Notation.** The items listed below without a reference whose definition is not immediate from the stated brief description are defined in [Melrose 1994].

<i>Notation</i>	<i>Description or definition</i>	<i>Reference</i>
$V_0$	restriction of $V$ to $\partial X$	
$\text{Cv}(V)$	set of critical values of $V_0$	
${}^{\text{sc}}T^*X$	scattering cotangent bundle over $X$	(1–3)
${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$	restriction of ${}^{\text{sc}}T^*X$ to $\partial X$	(1–3)
$x$	boundary defining function of $X$ such that (1–1) holds	
$y$	coordinates on $\partial X$	
$(\nu, \mu)$	fibre coordinates on ${}^{\text{sc}}T^*X$	(1–3)

<i>Notation</i>	<i>Description or definition</i>	<i>Reference</i>
$y = (y', y'', y''')$	decomposition of $y$ variable	Lemma 2.7
$\mu = (\mu', \mu'', \mu''')$	dual decomposition of $\mu$ variable	Lemma 2.7
$r'_i, r''_j, r'''_k$	eigenvalues of the contact map $A$	Lemma 2.7
$Y''_j$	$y''_j/x^{r''_j}$	(5–18)
$Y'''_k$	$y'''_k/x^{1/2}$	(5–18)
$\Delta$	(positive) Laplacian with respect to $g$	
$P$	$x^{-1}(\Delta + V - \sigma)$	Section 2
$H$	$\Delta + V$	
$R(\sigma)$	resolvent of $H$ , $(H - \sigma)^{-1}$	
$R(\sigma \pm i0)$	limit of resolvent on real axis from above/below	
$\tilde{V}$	modified potential	Lemma 8.5
$\text{Sp}(\sigma)$	(generalized) spectral projection of $H$ at energy $\sigma$	(1–2)
$\tilde{R}(\sigma)$	resolvent of modified potential $(\Delta + \tilde{V} - \sigma)^{-1}$	
$L^2_{\text{sc}}(X)$	$L^2$ space with respect to Riemannian density of $g$	
$H^{m,0}_{\text{sc}}(X)$	Sobolev space; image of $L^2_{\text{sc}}(X)$ under $(1 + \Delta)^{-m/2}$	
$H^{m,l}_{\text{sc}}(X)$	$x^l H^{m,0}_{\text{sc}}(X)$	
$\Psi^{m,0}_{\text{sc}}(X)$	scattering pseudodiff. ops. of differential order $m$	
$\Psi^{m,l}_{\text{sc}}(X)$	$x^l \Psi^{m,0}_{\text{sc}}(X)$ ; maps $H^{m',l'}_{\text{sc}}(X)$ to $H^{m'-m,l'+l}_{\text{sc}}(X)$	
$\sigma_{\partial,l}(A)$	boundary symbol of $A \in \Psi^{m,l}_{\text{sc}}(X)$ ; $\mathcal{C}^\infty$ fn. on ${}^{\text{sc}}T^*_{\partial X} X$	
$\sigma_{\partial}(A)$	$\sigma_{\partial,0}(A)$	
$\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u)$	scattering wavefront set of $u$ ; closed subset of ${}^{\text{sc}}T^*_{\partial X} X$	
$\text{WF}^{m,l}_{\text{sc}}(u)$	scattering wavefront set with respect to $H^{m,l}_{\text{sc}}$	
$\text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(A)$	operator scattering wave front set; in its complement $A$ is microlocally in $\Psi^{*,\infty}_{\text{sc}}(X)$ , in other words, is trivial	
${}^{\text{sc}}H_p$	scattering Hamilton vector field	Section 2
$\Phi_+(q)$	forward flowout from $q \in {}^{\text{sc}}T^*_{\partial X} X$	Section 1.1
radial point	point in ${}^{\text{sc}}T^*_{\partial X} X$ where $p$ and ${}^{\text{sc}}H_p$ vanish	Section 2
$\text{RP}_{\pm}(\sigma)$	set of radial points of $H - \sigma$ where $\pm\nu > 0$	
$\text{Min}_+(\sigma)$	subset of $\text{RP}_+(\sigma)$ associated to local minima of $V_0$	
$\leq$	partial order on $\text{RP}_+(\sigma)$ compatible with $\Phi_+$	Definition 8.3
$\tilde{E}_{\text{mic},+}(O, P)$	microlocal solutions of $Pu = 0$ in the set $O$	(4–1)
$E_{\text{mic},+}(q, \sigma)$	microlocal solutions of $(H - \sigma)u = 0$ near $q$	(4–4)
$E^s_{\text{ess}}(\sigma)$	space of generalized $\sigma$ -eigenfunctions of $H$	(9–1)
$E^s(\Gamma, \sigma)$	subset of $u \in E^s_{\text{ess}}(\sigma)$ with $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u) \cap \text{RP}_+(\sigma) \subset \Gamma$	(9–4)
$E^s_{\text{Min},+}(\sigma)$	$E^s(\Gamma, \sigma)$ , with $\Gamma = \text{Min}_+(\sigma)$	
$\mathcal{M}$	test module	Section 5
$I^{(s)}_{\text{sc}}(O, \mathcal{M})$	space of iteratively-regular functions with respect to $\mathcal{M}$	(5–6)
$\tau$	rescaled time variable; $\tau = xt$	Section 11
$X_{\text{Sch}}$	$X \times \mathbb{R}_\tau$	(11–2)

## 2. Radial points

Let  $X$  be a compact  $n$ -dimensional manifold with smooth boundary. Recall that if  $(x, y)$  are local coordinates on  $X$ , with  $x$  a boundary defining function, then dual scattering coordinates  $(\nu, \mu)$  on the scattering cotangent bundle are determined. The restriction of the scattering cotangent bundle to  $\partial X$  is denoted  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$  and has a natural contact structure, the contact form at the boundary being

$$\alpha = -d\nu + \sum_i \mu_i dy_i \tag{2-1}$$

in local coordinates. Recall that a contact structure on a  $2n - 1$ -dimensional manifold, here  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$ , is given by a nondegenerate one-form, that is, a one-form  $\alpha$  with  $\alpha \wedge (d\alpha)^{n-1}$  everywhere nonzero; correspondingly its kernel is a maximally nonintegrable hyperplane field on  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$ . One refers to either the line bundle given by the span of  $\alpha$ , or the hyperplane field given by its kernel, as the contact structure.

Suppose that  $P \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*-1}(X)$  is a scattering pseudodifferential operator of order  $-1$  at the boundary; for example,  $P = x^{-1}(\Delta + V - \sigma)$ . Then the boundary part of its principal symbol,  $p = \sigma_{\partial}(xP)$ , is a  $\mathcal{C}^\infty$  function on  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$ . In this, and the next, section we consider radial points of a general real-valued function,  $p \in \mathcal{C}^\infty({}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X)$ , with only occasional references to the particular case,  $p = |\zeta|^2 + V_0 - \sigma$ , of direct interest in this paper. Although we discuss radial points in the context of boundary points in the scattering calculus this analysis applies directly (and could alternatively be done for) radial points in the usual microlocal picture, as described in the Introduction. Our objective in this section is to find a change of coordinates, preserving the contact structure, in which the form of  $p$  is simplified. In this section we consider the simplification of  $p$  up to second order, in a sense made precise below.

The basic nondegeneracy assumption we make is that

$$p = 0 \text{ implies } dp \neq 0; \tag{2-2}$$

this excludes true “thresholds” which however do occur for our problem, when  $\sigma$  is a critical value of  $V_0$ . It follows directly from (2-2) that the boundary part of the characteristic variety

$$\Sigma = \{q \in {}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X; p(q) = 0\} \text{ is smooth;}$$

we shall assume that  $\Sigma$  is compact, corresponding to the ellipticity of  $P$ .

**Definition 2.1.** A *radial point* for a function  $p$  satisfying (2-2) is a point  $q \in \Sigma$  such that  $dp(q)$  is a (necessarily nonzero) multiple of the contact form  $\alpha$  given by (2-1). Conversely, if  $q \in \Sigma$  and  $dp$  and  $\alpha$  are linearly independent at  $q$  then we say that  $p$  is of *principal type* at  $q$ .

We may extend  $p$  to a  $\mathcal{C}^\infty$  function on  ${}^{\text{sc}}T^*X$ , still denoted by  $p$ . Over the interior  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{X^\circ}^*X$  is naturally identified with  $T^*X^\circ$ , which is a symplectic manifold with canonical symplectic form  $\omega$ . Near the boundary, expressed in terms of scattering-dual coordinates,

$$\omega = d\left(-\nu \frac{dx}{x^2} + \sum_i \mu_i \frac{dy_i}{x}\right) = (-d\nu + \sum_i \mu_i dy_i) \wedge \frac{dx}{x^2} + \sum_i d\mu_i \wedge \frac{dy_i}{x}.$$

Consider the Hamilton vector field,  $H_{x^{-1}p}$ , of  $x^{-1}p$ , which we shall denote  ${}^{\text{sc}}H_p$ , fixed by the identity  $\omega(\cdot, {}^{\text{sc}}H_p) = dp$ . Then  ${}^{\text{sc}}H_p$  extends to a vector field on  ${}^{\text{sc}}T^*X$  tangent to its boundary, so  ${}^{\text{sc}}H_p$  lies in

$\mathcal{V}_b(\text{sc}T^*X)$ .<sup>1</sup> At the boundary  $\text{sc}H_p$ , as an element of  $\mathcal{V}_b(\text{sc}T^*X)$ , is independent of the extension of  $p$ . We denote the restriction of  $\text{sc}H_p$  (as a vector field) to  $\text{sc}T_{\partial X}^*X$  by  $W$ , so  $W$  is a vector field on  $\text{sc}T_{\partial X}^*X$ . Explicitly in local coordinates

$$\begin{aligned} \text{sc}H_p = & -(\partial_\nu p)(x\partial_x + \mu \cdot \partial_\mu) + (x\partial_x p - p + \mu \cdot \partial_\mu p)\partial_\nu \\ & + \sum_j (\partial_{\mu_j} p \partial_{y_j} - \partial_{y_j} p \partial_{\mu_j}) + x\mathcal{V}_b(\text{sc}T^*X); \end{aligned} \quad (2-3)$$

since  $p$  is smooth up to the boundary,  $x\partial_x p = 0$  at  $\text{sc}T_{\partial X}^*X$ . Thus,

$$W = -(\partial_\nu p)\mu \cdot \partial_\mu + (\mu \cdot \partial_\mu p - p)\partial_\nu + \sum_j (\partial_{\mu_j} p \partial_{y_j} - \partial_{y_j} p \partial_{\mu_j}). \quad (2-4)$$

Alternatively  $W$  may be described in terms of the contact structure on  $\text{sc}T_{\partial X}^*X$ . Namely  $W$  is the Legendre vector field of  $p$ , determined by

$$d\alpha(\cdot, W) + \gamma\alpha = dp, \quad \alpha(W) = p \quad (2-5)$$

for some function  $\gamma$ . It follows that  $W$  is tangent to  $\Sigma$ , since  $dp(W) = \gamma\alpha(W) = \gamma p = 0$  at any point at which  $p$  vanishes. An equivalent definition of  $q \in \Sigma$  being a radial point is that the vector field  $W$  vanishes as  $q$ , as follows from (2-5) and the nondegeneracy of  $\alpha$ .

**Definition 2.2.** A radial point  $q \in \Sigma$  for a real-valued function  $p \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\text{sc}T_{\partial X}^*X)$  satisfying (2-2) is said to be *nondegenerate* if the vector field  $W$ , restricted to  $\Sigma = \{p = 0\}$ , has a nondegenerate zero at  $q$ . Note that this implies that a nondegenerate radial point is necessarily isolated in the set of radial points.

Since the vector field  $W$  vanishes at a radial point  $q$ , its linearization is well defined as a linear map,  $A'$  on  $T_q \text{sc}T_{\partial X}^*X$ , (later we will use the transpose,  $A$ , as a map on differentials)

$$A'v = [V, W](q),$$

for any smooth vector field  $V$  with  $V(q) = v$ ; it is independent of the choice of extension and can also be written in terms of the Lie derivative

$$A'v = -\mathcal{L}_W V(q). \quad (2-6)$$

Since  $Wp = \gamma p$ ,  $A'$  preserves the subspace  $T_q \Sigma$ . Since  $\alpha$  is normal to  $T_q \Sigma$ , the restriction of  $d\alpha$  to  $T_q \Sigma$  is a symplectic 2-form,  $\omega_q$ .

**Lemma 2.3.** *At a nondegenerate radial point for  $p$ , where  $dp = \lambda\alpha$ , the linearization  $A'$  acting on  $T_q \Sigma$  is such that*

$$S \equiv A' - \frac{1}{2}\lambda \text{Id} \in \mathfrak{sp}(2(n-1))$$

*is in the Lie algebra of the symplectic group with respect to  $\omega_q$ :*

$$\omega_q(Sv_1, v_2) + \omega_q(v_1, Sv_2) = 0, \quad \forall v_1, v_2 \in T_q \Sigma.$$

<sup>1</sup>Here  $\mathcal{V}_b(M)$  denotes the space of smooth vector fields on the manifold with boundary  $M$  that are tangent to  $\partial M$ .

*Proof.* Observe that (2–5) implies that

$$L_W \alpha = (d\alpha)(W, \cdot) + d(\alpha(W)) = \gamma \alpha.$$

For two vector smooth vector fields  $V_i$ , defined near  $q$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} W(d\alpha(V_1, V_2)) &= L_W(d\alpha(V_1, V_2)) \\ &= (L_W d\alpha)(V_1, V_2) + d\alpha(L_W V_1, V_2) + d\alpha(V_1, L_W V_2). \end{aligned}$$

The left side vanishes at  $q$  so using (2–6)

$$\omega_q(A'v_1, v_2) + \omega_q(v_1, A'v_2) = \lambda \omega_q(v_1, v_2) \quad \forall v_1, v_2 \in T_q \Sigma. \quad \square$$

It follows from Lemma 2.3 (see for example [Guillemin and Schaeffer 1977]) that  $A'$  is decomposable into invariant subspaces of dimension 2 and 4, with eigenvalues on the two-dimensional subspaces of the form  $\lambda r$ ,  $\lambda(1-r)$ ,  $r \leq 1/2$  real or  $\lambda(1/2+ia)$ ,  $\lambda(1/2-ia)$ , with  $a > 0$ .

Note that, by (2–5),  $d_\nu p(q) = -\gamma(q) = -\lambda$ , so from (2–3), the Hamilton vector field  ${}^{\text{sc}}H_p$  is equal to  $\lambda x \partial_x$  modulo vector fields of the form  $f \cdot W'$  where  $W$  is tangent to  $\{x=0\}$  and  $f(q) = 0$ . Therefore if  $\lambda > 0$ , then  $x$  is increasing along bicharacteristics of  $p$  in the interior of  ${}^{\text{sc}}T^*X$ , that is, the bicharacteristics leave the boundary, that is, “come in from infinity” if  $\partial X$  is removed, while if  $\lambda < 0$ , the bicharacteristics approach the boundary, that is, “go out to infinity”. Correspondingly we make the following definition.

**Definition 2.4.** We say that a nondegenerate radial point  $q$  for  $p$  with  $dp(q) = \lambda \alpha(q)$  is outgoing if  $\lambda < 0$ , and we say that it is incoming if  $\lambda > 0$ .

For  $p = |\zeta|^2 + V_0 - \sigma$ , we have  $\lambda = -\partial_\nu p = -2\nu$ . Hence, radial points are outgoing for  $\nu > 0$  and incoming for  $\nu < 0$  in this case. We next discuss the form the linearization takes for  $p = |\zeta|^2 + V_0 - \sigma$ .

**Lemma 2.5.** For the function  $p = |\zeta|^2 + V_0 - \sigma$  with  $V_0$  Morse, the radial points are all nondegenerate and the linear operator  $S$  associated with each has only two-dimensional invariant symplectic subspaces.

**Remark 2.6.** In view of the nonoccurrence of nondecomposable invariant subspaces of dimension 4 in this case we will exclude them from further discussion below.

*Proof.* Choose Riemannian normal coordinates  $y_j$  on  $\partial X$ , so the metric function  $h$  satisfies  $h - |\mu|^2 = \mathcal{O}(|y|^2)$ . Since the Hessian of  $V|_{\partial X}$  at a critical point is a symmetric matrix, it can be diagonalized by a linear change of coordinates on  $\partial X$ , given by a matrix in  $\text{SO}(n-1)$ , which thus preserves the form of the metric. It follows that for each  $j$ ,  $(dy_j, d\mu_j)$  is an invariant subspace of  $A$ .  $\square$

Let  $\mathcal{I}$  denote the ideal of  $\mathcal{C}^\infty$  functions on  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$  vanishing at a given radial point,  $q$ . The linearization of  $W$  then acts on  $T_q^*({}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X) = \mathcal{I}/\mathcal{I}^2$ ;  $dp(q)$ , or equivalently  $\alpha_q$ , is necessarily an eigenvector of  $A$  with eigenvalue 0. Similarly,  ${}^{\text{sc}}H_p$  defines a linear map  $\tilde{A}$  on  $T_q^*({}^{\text{sc}}T^*X)$ . By (2–3),  $\tilde{A}$  preserves the conormal line,  $\text{span } dx$  and the eigenvalue of  $\tilde{A}$  corresponding to the eigenvector  $dx$  is  $\lambda$ . Thus  $\tilde{A}$  acts on the quotient

$$T_q^*({}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X) \equiv T_q^*({}^{\text{sc}}T^*X) / \text{span } dx,$$

and this action clearly reduces to  $A$ .

By Darboux’s theorem we may make a local contact diffeomorphism of  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$  and arrange that  $q = (0, 0, 0)$ . Thus, as a module over  $\mathcal{C}^\infty({}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X)$  in terms of multiplication of functions,  $\mathcal{I}$  is generated

by  $v$ ,  $y_j$  and the  $\mu_j$ , for  $j = 1, \dots, n - 1$ . Thus in general we have the following possibilities for the two-dimensional invariant subspaces of  $A$ .

- (i) There are two independent real eigenvectors with eigenvalues in  $\lambda(\mathbb{R} \setminus [0, 1])$ .
- (ii) There are two independent real eigenvectors with eigenvalues in  $\lambda(0, 1)$ .
- (iii) There are no real eigenvectors and two complex eigenvectors with eigenvalues in  $\lambda(\frac{1}{2} + i(\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}))$ .
- (iv) There is only one nonzero real eigenvector with eigenvalue  $\frac{1}{2}\lambda$ .

Case (iv) was called the ‘‘Hessian threshold’’ case in Part I. In all cases the sum of the two (generalized) eigenvalues is  $\lambda$ .

**Lemma 2.7.** *By making a change of contact coordinates, that is, a change of coordinates on  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^* X$  preserving the contact structure, near a radial point  $q$  for  $p \in \mathcal{C}^\infty({}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^* X)$  for which the linearization has neither a Hessian threshold subspace, (iv), nor any nondecomposable 4-dimensional invariant subspace, coordinates  $y$  and  $\mu$ , decomposed as  $y = (y', y'', y''')$  and  $\mu = (\mu', \mu'', \mu''')$ , may be introduced so that*

$$(i) \quad (y', \mu') = (y_1, \dots, y_{s-1}, \mu_1, \dots, \mu_{s-1}),$$

where  $e'_j = dy'_j$ ,  $f'_j = d\mu'_j$  are eigenvectors of  $A$  with eigenvalues  $\lambda r'_j$ ,  $\lambda(1 - r'_j)$ ,  $j = 1, \dots, s - 1$  with  $r'_j < 0$  real and negative.

$$(ii) \quad (y'', \mu'') = (y_s, \dots, y_{m-1}, \mu_s, \dots, \mu_{m-1}) \text{ where } e''_j = dy''_j, f''_j = d\mu''_j \text{ are eigenvectors with eigenvalues } \lambda r''_j, \lambda(1 - r''_j), j = s, \dots, m - 1 \text{ where } 0 < r''_j \leq 1/2 \text{ is real and positive.}$$

$$(iii) \quad (y''', \mu''') = (y_m, \dots, y_{n-1}, \mu_m, \dots, \mu_{n-1}), \text{ where some complex combination } e'''_j, f'''_j, \text{ of } dy'''_j \text{ and } d\mu'''_j, m \leq j \leq n - 1, \text{ are eigenvectors with eigenvalues } \lambda r'''_j \text{ and } \lambda(1 - r'''_j) \text{ with } r'''_j = 1/2 + i\beta'''_j, \beta'''_j > 0.$$

Thus if we set  $e = (e', e'', e''')$ ,  $f = (f', f'', f''')$  the eigenvectors of  $A$  are  $dv$ ,  $e_j$  and  $f_j$ , with respective eigenvalues  $0$ ,  $\lambda r_j$  and  $\lambda(1 - r_j)$ ; we will take the coordinates so that the  $r_j$  are ordered by their real parts.

**Remark 2.8.** We emphasize that the change of coordinates here is on the contact space,  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^* X$ , and it is, in general, not induced by a change of coordinates on  $X$ . Analytically it is implemented by a scattering FIO (see Section 3.1).

In coordinates in which the eigenspaces take this form it can be seen directly that

$$p = \lambda \left( -v + \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} r_j y_j \mu_j + \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} Q_j(y_j, \mu_j) + v g_1 + g_2 \right) \tag{2-7}$$

with the  $Q_j$  elliptic homogeneous polynomials of degree 2,  $g_1$  vanishing at least linearly and  $g_2$  to third order.

**Remark 2.9.** For the function  $p = |\zeta|^2 + V_0 - \sigma$  with  $V_0$  Morse, the eigenvalues of  $A$  at a radial point  $q$  are easily calculated in the coordinates used in the proof of Lemma 2.5. Indeed, since the 2-dimensional invariant subspaces decouple, the results of [Hassell et al. 2004, Proof of Proposition 1.2] can be used.

The eigenvalues corresponding to the 2-dimensional subspace in which the eigenvalue of the Hessian is  $2a_j$  are thus

$$\lambda \left( \frac{1}{2} \pm \sqrt{\frac{1}{4} - \frac{a_j}{\sigma - V_0(0)}} \right), \text{ where } \lambda = -2\nu(q).$$

In fact, below we do not need the full power of Lemma 2.7. Essentially it suffices if we arrange that the eigenvectors corresponding to the (in absolute value) larger eigenvalues, namely  $\lambda(1 - r'_j)$ , if  $r'_j < 0$ , or  $\lambda(1 - r''_j)$ , if  $r''_j \in (0, \frac{1}{2})$ , are in a model form on the two dimensional eigenspaces. The advantage of the weaker conclusion is that one has more freedom in choosing the contact change of coordinates.

**Lemma 2.10** (Weaker version of Lemma 2.7). *Suppose that  $\frac{1}{2}\lambda$  is not an eigenvalue of  $A$ . By making a change of contact coordinates, that is, a change of coordinates on  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$  preserving the contact structure, near a radial point  $q$  for  $p \in {}^{\text{c}}\mathcal{L}^\infty({}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X)$  for which the linearization has neither a Hessian threshold subspace, (iv), nor any nondecomposable 4-dimensional invariant subspace, coordinates  $y$  and  $\mu$ , decomposed as  $y = (y', y'', y''')$  and  $\mu = (\mu', \mu'', \mu''')$ , may be introduced so that:*

$$(i) \quad (y', \mu') = (y_1, \dots, y_{s-1}, \mu_1, \dots, \mu_{s-1}),$$

where some real linear combinations  $e'_j$  of  $d\mu'_j$  and  $dy'_j$ , respectively  $f'_j = d\mu'_j$  are eigenvectors of  $A$  with eigenvalues  $\lambda r'_j$ , respectively,  $\lambda(1 - r'_j)$ ,  $j = 1, \dots, s - 1$  with  $r'_j < 0$  real and negative.

$$(ii) \quad (y'', \mu'') = (y_s, \dots, y_{m-1}, \mu_s, \dots, \mu_{m-1}) \text{ where some real linear combinations } e''_j \text{ of } d\mu''_j \text{ and } dy''_j, \text{ respectively, } f''_j = d\mu''_j \text{ are eigenvectors with eigenvalues } \lambda r''_j, \lambda(1 - r''_j), j = s, \dots, m - 1 \text{ where } 0 < r''_j < 1/2 \text{ is real and positive.}$$

$$(iii) \quad (y''', \mu''') = (y_m, \dots, y_{n-1}, \mu_m, \dots, \mu_{n-1}), \text{ where some complex combination } e'''_j, f'''_j, \text{ of } dy'''_j \text{ and } d\mu'''_j, m \leq j \leq n - 1, \text{ are eigenvectors with eigenvalues } \lambda r'''_j \text{ and } \lambda(1 - r'''_j) \text{ with } r'''_j = 1/2 + i\beta'''_j, \beta'''_j > 0.$$

Again, if we set  $e = (e', e'', e''')$ ,  $f = (f', f'', f''')$  the eigenvectors of  $A$  are  $d\nu, e_j$  and  $f_j$ , with respective eigenvalues  $0, \lambda r_j$  and  $\lambda(1 - r_j)$ ; we will take the coordinates so that the  $r_j$  are ordered by their real parts. In these coordinates a version of (2-7) still holds, namely if  $a_j$  and  $b_j$  are any functions on  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$  vanishing at  $(0, 0, 0)$  with differential  $e_j$ , respectively  $f_j$ ,  $j = 1, \dots, m - 1$  (so we may take  $b_j = \mu_j$ , and we may take  $a_j$  a  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear combination of  $y_j$  and  $\mu_j$ ) then

$$\begin{aligned} p &= \lambda \left( -\nu + \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} r_j a_j b_j + \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} Q_j(y_j, \mu_j) + \nu g_1 + g_2 \right) \\ &= \lambda \left( -\nu + \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} r_j y_j \mu_j + \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} c_j \mu_j^2 + \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} Q_j(y_j, \mu_j) + \nu g_1 + g_2 \right), \end{aligned} \quad (2-8)$$

where the  $c_j$  are real, the  $Q_j$  are elliptic homogeneous polynomials of degree 2,  $g_1$  vanishes at least linearly and  $g_2$  to third order.

As mentioned, Lemma 2.10 is weaker than, hence is an immediate consequence of, Lemma 2.7. Although it is by no means essential, this weaker result leaves more freedom in choosing the contact map which is useful in making the choice rather explicit, if this is desired. In fact, if  $p = |\zeta|^2 + V_0 - \sigma$ , as in Lemma 2.5, we immediately deduce the following.

**Lemma 2.11.** *For the function  $p = |\zeta|^2 + V_0 - \sigma$  with  $V_0$  Morse, the contact map in Lemma 2.10 can be taken as the composition of the contact map on  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$  induced by a change of coordinates on  $X$ , with the canonical relation of multiplication by a function of the form  $e^{i\phi/x}$ ,  $\phi \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(X)$ .*

**Remark 2.12.** The canonical relation of multiplication by  $e^{i\phi/x}$  is given, in local coordinates  $(y, \nu, \mu)$ , by the map

$$\Phi_\phi : (y, \nu, \mu) \mapsto (y, \nu + \phi(y), \mu + \partial_y \phi(y)),$$

that is, if we write  $\Phi_\phi(y, \nu, \mu) = (\bar{y}, \bar{\nu}, \bar{\mu})$ , then  $\bar{\mu}_k = \mu_k + \partial_{y_k} \phi(y)$ . Note that while  $\phi$  is a function on  $X$ , the canonical relation only depends on  $\phi|_{\partial X}$ , which is why we simply regard  $\phi$  as a function on  $\partial X$  and write  $\phi(y)$  here.

*Proof.* As in the proof of Lemma 2.5 we may assume, by a change of coordinates on  $X$ , that the critical point of  $V_0$  over which the radial point  $q$  lies is  $y = 0$ , that  $h - |\mu|^2 = \mathcal{O}(|y|^2)$  and that the Hessian of  $V_0$  at 0 is diagonal, so for each  $j$ ,  $(dy_j, d\mu_j)$  is an invariant subspace of  $A$ . Note that in the coordinates  $(y, \nu, \mu)$ ,  $q = (0, \nu_0, 0)$ . With the notation of Remark 2.9 above, if  $dy_j$  is an eigenvector of the Hessian with eigenvalue  $2a_j$  then the eigenvectors of  $A$  of eigenvalue  $\lambda r_j$ , respectively  $\lambda(1 - r_j)$ , are  $\tilde{e}_j = (\lambda/2)(1 - r_j)dy_j + d\mu_j$ , respectively  $\tilde{f}_j = (\lambda/2)r_j dy_j + d\mu_j$ ; see Remark 1.3 of [Hassell et al. 2004]. In particular, if  $r_j$  is real, so is  $\tilde{f}_j$ .

Now, the contact map  $\Phi_\phi$  induced by multiplication by  $e^{i\phi/x}$  as above acts on  $T^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$  by pullbacks, namely

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi_\phi^* \left( \sum_k \bar{y}_k^* d\bar{y}_k + \bar{\nu}^* d\bar{\nu} + \sum_k \bar{\mu}_k^* d\bar{\mu}_k \right) \\ = \sum_k \bar{y}_k^* dy_k + \bar{\nu}^* (d\nu + \sum_j (\partial_{y_j} \phi) dy_j) + \sum_k \bar{\mu}_k^* (d\mu_k + \sum_j \partial_{y_j} \partial_{y_k} \phi(y) dy_j). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, by the above remark,  $\Phi$  will map  $q$  to  $(0, 0, 0)$  provided  $\phi(0) = -\nu_0$ ,  $\partial_{y_j} \phi(0) = 0$  for all  $j$ . In this case, moreover, the pullback  $\Phi_\phi^*$  will map  $dy_k$  to  $dy_k$ ,  $d\nu$  to  $d\nu$  and  $d\mu_k$  to  $d\mu_k + \sum_j \partial_{y_j} \partial_{y_k} \phi(y)$ . Correspondingly, by letting  $\phi(y) = -\nu_0 + \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} b_j y_j^2$ ,  $b_j = (\lambda/4)r_j$ ,  $(\Phi_\phi^{-1})^*$  maps  $\tilde{f}_j$  to  $d\mu_j$ ,  $j = 1, \dots, m - 1$ . Since the Legendre vector field  $W'$  of  $(\Phi_\phi^{-1})^*p$  is the pushforward of the Legendre vector field  $W$  of  $p$  under  $\Phi_\phi$ , it follows that  $d\mu_j$  is an eigenvector of the linearization of  $W'$  with eigenvalue  $\lambda(1 - r_j)$ . As  $\Phi_\phi^*$  also maps the 2-dimensional subspaces  $(dy_j, d\mu_j)$  (at  $(0, 0, 0)$ ) to the 2-dimensional subspaces  $(dy_j, d\mu_j)$  (at  $q$ ), and the latter are invariant under  $A$ , so are the former under the linearization of  $W'$ . This proves the lemma.  $\square$

### 3. Microlocal normal form

Let  $P \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*-1}(X)$  be an operator with real principal symbol  $p$  obeying (2–2), as in the previous section, and assume that  $q$  is a nondegenerate radial point for  $p$ . In this section we shall reduce  $p$  to a normal form, via conjugation with a scattering Fourier integral operator. We first pause to define such operators.

**3.1. Scattering Fourier integral operators.** Scattering Fourier integral operators (FIOs) are defined in terms of conventional FIOs via the local Fourier transform, as defined in [Melrose and Zworski 1996]. Let  $X$  be a manifold of dimension  $n$  with boundary, and  $(x, y)$  local coordinates where  $x$  is a boundary defining function. We can always identify a neighbourhood  $U \subset \partial X$  of  $y_0 \in \partial X$  with an open set



$V \in S^{n-1}$ , which we can think of as embedded in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  in the standard way. Correspondingly we may identify the interior of a neighbourhood  $[0, \epsilon)_x \times U \subset X$  of  $(0, y_0) \in X$  with the an asymptotically conic open set  $(\epsilon^{-1}, \infty) \times V \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . If we choose a function  $\phi \in C^\infty(X)$  supported in  $[0, \epsilon)_x \times U$  which is identically 1 in a neighbourhood of  $(0, y_0)$ , then the operator  $\mathcal{F}$  with kernel

$$e^{iz \cdot y/x} \phi(x, y) \frac{d\omega(y)dx}{x^{n+1}}$$

is called a “local Fourier transform” on  $X$ . Here  $z = (z_1, \dots, z_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $z \cdot y$  denotes the inner product on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and  $d\omega(y)$  denotes the standard measure on  $S^{n-1}$  (pulled back to  $\partial X$  and then to  $X$  via the identifications above). Of course, if  $X$  is the radial compactification of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and the identification between  $U$  and  $V$  is the identity, then  $\mathcal{F}$  really is the Fourier transform premultiplied by the cutoff function  $\phi$ .

It is shown in [Melrose and Zworski 1996] that  $\mathcal{F}$  induces a local bijection between  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^* X$  and the cosphere bundle of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . In fact, using our identification between  $U$  and  $V \subset S^{n-1}$  we may represent points in  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^* X$  as  $(\hat{z}, \zeta)$  where  $\hat{z} = z/|z| \in V$  represents a point in  $U$  and  $\zeta$  represents the point in the fibre given by  $(\nu, \mu)$  where  $\nu$  is the parallel component of  $\zeta$  relative to  $\hat{z}$  and  $\mu$  is the orthogonal component. The identification is then given by the Legendre map

$$L(\hat{z}, \zeta) = (\zeta, -\hat{z}) \in S^* \mathbb{R}^n.$$

In other words,  $\mathcal{F}$  sets up a bijection between scattering wavefront set and conventional wavefront set. Moreover, it is shown in [Melrose and Zworski 1996] that conjugation by  $\mathcal{F}$  maps the scattering pseudodifferential operators  $A \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*l}(X)$  microsupported near  $(y_0, \nu_0, \mu_0)$  to the conventional pseudodifferential operators microsupported near  $L(y_0, \nu_0, \mu_0)$ , with principal symbols related by

$$\sigma^l(\mathcal{F}A\mathcal{F}^*)(L(q)) = a(q),$$

where  $a$  is the boundary symbol of  $A$  (of order  $l$ ).

**Definition 3.1.** A scattering FIO is an operator  $E$  from  $\dot{C}^\infty(X)$  to  $C^{-\infty}(X)$  such that, for any local Fourier transforms  $\mathcal{F}_1, \mathcal{F}_2$  on  $X$ ,  $\mathcal{F}_2 E \mathcal{F}_1^*$  is a conventional FIO on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

A simple example of a scattering FIO is multiplication by an oscillatory factor  $e^{i\psi(y)/x}$ . Under conjugation by a local Fourier transform this becomes a conventional FIO given by an oscillatory integral with phase function  $(z - z') \cdot \zeta + |\zeta| \psi(\zeta/|\zeta|)$ . The scattering resolvent kernel constructed by the Hassell and Vasy [1999; 2001], microlocalized to the interior of the “propagating Legendrian”, is another example.

It follows then that we can find a scattering FIO quantizing any given contact transformation from a neighbourhood of a point  $q \in {}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^* X$  to itself, since we may conjugate by a local Fourier transform and reduce the problem to finding a conventional FIO quantizing a homogeneous canonical transformation from a conic neighbourhood of  $L(q) \in S^* \mathbb{R}^n$  to itself. We can also use the local Fourier transform to import Egorov’s theorem into the scattering calculus. Namely, if  $B \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*, -1}(X)$  is a scattering pseudodifferential operator of order  $-1$ , with real principal symbol, and  $P \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*, -1}(X)$  then also  $e^{-iB} P e^{iB} \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*, -1}(X)$  is a scattering pseudodifferential operator of order  $-1$ , whose symbol  $p'$  is related to that of  $P$  by the time 1 flow of the Hamilton vector field of  $B$ . This indeed is how we shall conjugate the principal symbol  $p$  of our operator to normal form.

**3.2. Normal form.** In this section we put the principal symbol of  $P$  into a normal form  $p_{\text{norm}}$ . For later purposes we shall also need the subprincipal symbol of  $P$  in a normal form, but only along the “flow-out”, that is, the unstable manifold, of  $q$ , which can be done via conjugation by a function; this is accomplished in Lemma 6.1. (The model form of the subprincipal symbol only plays a role in the polyhomogeneous, as opposed to just conormal, analysis, which is the reason it is postponed to Section 6.)

For this purpose, we only need to construct the principal symbol  $\sigma(B)$  of  $B$  as in the first subsection. This in turn can be written as  $x^{-1}\tilde{b}$ ,  $\tilde{b} \in \mathcal{C}^\infty({}^{\text{sc}}T^*X)$ , so we only need to construct a function  $b$  on  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$  such that the pullback  $\Phi^*p$  of  $p$  by the time 1 flow  $\Phi$  of  $H_{x^{-1}\tilde{b}}$  is the desired model form  $p_{\text{norm}}$ , where  $\tilde{b}$  is some extension of  $b$  to  ${}^{\text{sc}}T^*X$ ; this property is independent of the chosen extension. Thus *any*  $B$  with  $\sigma(B) = \tilde{b}$  will conjugate  $P$  to an operator with principal symbol  $p_{\text{norm}}$ . This construction is accomplished in two steps, following Guillemin and Schaeffer [1977] in the nonresonant setting. First we construct the Taylor series of  $b$  at  $q = (0, 0, 0)$ , which puts  $p$  into a model form modulo terms vanishing to infinite order at  $q$ . Next, we remove this error *along the unstable manifold* of  $q$  by modifying an argument due to Nelson [1969].

Rather than using powers of  $\mathcal{F}$  to filter the Taylor series of  $b$ , we proceed as in [Guillemin and Schaeffer 1977] and assign degree 1 to  $y$  and  $\mu$  but degree two to  $\nu$  in local coordinates as discussed above. Thus, let  $\mathfrak{h}^j$  denote the space of functions

$$\mathfrak{h}^j = \sum_{2\alpha + |\alpha| + |\beta| - 2 = j} \nu^\alpha y^\alpha \mu^\beta \mathcal{C}^\infty({}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X)$$

Note that this is well-defined, independently of our choice of local coordinates, since  $-d\nu$  is the contact form  $\alpha$  at  $q$ , so  $\nu$  is well-defined up to quadratic terms. The Poisson bracket preserves this filtration of  $\mathcal{F}$  in the following sense. If  $\tilde{a}, \tilde{b}$  are some smooth extensions to  ${}^{\text{sc}}T^*X$  of elements  $a \in \mathfrak{h}^i, b \in \mathfrak{h}^j$  then

$$x^{-1}\tilde{c} = \{x^{-1}\tilde{a}, x^{-1}\tilde{b}\} \implies c = \tilde{c}|_{{}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X} \in \mathfrak{h}^{i+j}.$$

When this holds we write  $c = \{\{a, b\}\}$ ; explicitly,

$$\{\{a, b\}\} = W_a(b) + \frac{\partial a}{\partial \nu} b - \frac{\partial b}{\partial \nu} a, \tag{3-1}$$

with  $W$  given by (2-4). Thus

$$\{\{., .\}\} : \mathfrak{h}^i \times \mathfrak{h}^j \mapsto \mathfrak{h}^{i+j}.$$

We then consider the quotient

$$\mathfrak{g}^j = \mathfrak{h}^j / \mathfrak{h}^{j+1},$$

so the bracket  $\{\{., .\}\}$  descends to

$$\mathfrak{g}^i \times \mathfrak{g}^j \rightarrow \mathfrak{g}^{i+j}.$$

**Remark 3.2.** These statements remain true with  $\mathfrak{h}^j$  replaced by  $\mathcal{F}^j$ . However, note that  $p = -\nu$  in  $\mathcal{F}/\mathcal{F}^2$ , since  $dp = -d\nu$  at  $q$ , but it is *not the case* that  $p = -\nu$  in  $\mathfrak{g}^0$ . In fact,  $p$  is given by (3-2) below in  $\mathfrak{g}^0$ .

Using contact coordinates as discussed above,  $\mathfrak{g}^j$  may be freely identified with the space of homogeneous functions of  $\nu, y, \mu$  of degree  $j + 2$  where the degree of  $\nu$  is 2. Now let  $p_0$  be the part of  $p$  of

homogeneity degree two. In order to use Lemmas 2.7 and 2.10, we assume throughout the paper from here on that case (iv) above Lemma 2.7 does not apply. Hence from (2-7)

$$p_0 = \lambda \left( -\nu + \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} r_j y_j \mu_j + \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} Q_j(y_j, \mu_j) \right), \quad p - p_0 \in \mathfrak{h}^1. \tag{3-2}$$

If we take  $b \in \mathfrak{h}^l, l \geq 1$  and let  $\Phi$  be the time 1 flow of  $H_{x^{-1}b}$  then

$$x\Phi^*(x^{-1}p) = p + \{\{p, b\}\} = p + \{\{p_0, b\}\}, \text{ modulo } \mathfrak{h}^{l+1}.$$

This allows us to remove higher order term in the Taylor series of the symbol successively provided we can solve the ‘‘homological equation’’

$$\{\{p_0, b\}\} = e \in \mathfrak{h}^l, \text{ modulo } \mathfrak{h}^{l+1}.$$

Thus we need to consider the range of this linear map; its eigenfunctions are easily found from the eigenfunctions of the linearization of  $W$ .

**Lemma 3.3.** *The (equivalence classes of the) monomials  $p_0^a e^\alpha f^\beta$  with  $2a + |\alpha| + |\beta| = l + 2$  satisfy*

$$\{\{p_0, p_0^a e^\alpha f^\beta\}\} = R_{\alpha, \beta} p_0^a e^\alpha f^\beta$$

with eigenvalues

$$R_{\alpha, \beta} = \lambda \left( a - 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \alpha_j r_j + \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \beta_j (1 - r_j) \right) \tag{3-3}$$

and give a basis of eigenvectors for  $\{\{p_0, \cdot\}\}$  acting on  $\mathfrak{g}^l$ .

Here we identify the differentials  $e_j$  and  $f_j$  with linear functions with these differentials.

**Remark 3.4.** In fact, the contact coordinates given by Lemma 2.10 suffice for the proof of this lemma; the additional information in Lemma 2.7 is not needed. In this case, by (2-8),

$$p_0 = \lambda \left( -\nu + \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} r_j e_j f_j + \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} Q_j(y_j, \mu_j) \right).$$

We also remark that we could equally well use the eigenvector basis for  $\{\{p_0, \cdot\}\}$  acting on  $\mathfrak{g}^l$  given by  $v^\alpha e^\alpha f^\beta$  with  $2a + |\alpha| + |\beta| = l + 2$ . This follows from the lemma using that

$$\nu = \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} r_j y_j \mu_j + \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} Q_j(y_j, \mu_j) - \lambda^{-1} p_0$$

in  $\mathfrak{g}^0$ , and  $y_j \mu_j$  as well as  $Q_j(y_j, \mu_j)$  are eigenvectors with eigenvalue  $\lambda(r_j + (1 - r_j)) = \lambda$ , and so is  $p_0$ .

*Proof.* Taking into account the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of  $A$ , all eigenvalues and eigenvectors of  $\{\{p_0, \cdot\}\}$  can be calculated iteratively using the derivation property of the original Poisson bracket. This

implies

$$\begin{aligned} \{\{p_0, ab\}\} &= x\{x^{-1}p_0, x(x^{-1}a)(x^{-1}b)\} \\ &= x^{-1}\{x^{-1}p_0, x\}ab + x\{x^{-1}p_0, x^{-1}a\}b + xa\{x^{-1}p_0, x^{-1}b\} \\ &= \lambda ab + \{\{p_0, a\}\}b + a\{\{p_0, b\}\}, \end{aligned}$$

where each term within  $\{.,.\}$  really uses a  $\mathcal{C}^\infty$  extensions of the  $a, b, p_0$  to  ${}^{\text{sc}}T^*X$ , followed by evaluation of the bracket and then restriction to  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$ . Since

$$\{\{p_0, a\}\} = x\{x^{-1}p_0, x^{-1}a\} = x\{x^{-1}p_0, x^{-1}\}a + \{x^{-1}p_0, a\} = -\lambda a + \{x^{-1}p_0, a\},$$

on  $\mathfrak{g}^{-1}$  the eigenvectors of  $\{\{p_0, .\}\}$  are the eigenvectors  $e_j$  and  $f_j$  of  $A$  with eigenvalues  $-\lambda + \lambda r_j$  and  $-\lambda + \lambda(1 - r_j)$ . Moreover, in  $\mathfrak{g}^0$ ,  $p_0$  is an eigenvector of  $\{\{p_0, .\}\}$  with eigenvalue 0. Thus,  $e_j, f_j$  and  $p_0$  satisfy the claim of the lemma. Since the other generators of  $\mathfrak{g}^0$ , as well as generators of  $\mathfrak{g}^j, j \geq 1$ , can be written as a products of the  $e_j, f_j$  and  $p_0$ , the conclusion of the lemma follows by induction.  $\square$

**Definition 3.5.** We call the multiindices in the set

$$I = \{(a, \alpha, \beta); R_{a,\alpha,\beta} = 0 \text{ and } 2a + |\alpha| + |\beta| \geq 3\}, \tag{3-4}$$

with  $R_{a,\alpha,\beta}$  given by (3-3), *resonant*.

Conjugation therefore allows us to remove, by iteration, all terms except those with indices in  $I$ . Expanding  $p_0^a$  using (3-2) we deduce the following.

**Proposition 3.6.** *If  $P$  is as above and the leading term of  $p = \sigma_{\partial, -1}(P)$  is given by (3-2) near a given radial point  $q$  then there exists a local contact diffeomorphism  $\Phi$  near  $q$  such that*

$$\Phi^* p = \lambda \left( -v + \sum_{j=1}^m r_j y_j \mu_j + \sum_{j=m+1}^{n-1} Q_j(y_j, \mu_j) + \sum_{(a,\alpha,\beta) \in I} c_{a,\alpha,\beta} v^a e^\alpha f^\beta \right) \text{ modulo } \mathcal{I}^\infty = \mathfrak{h}^\infty \text{ at } q \tag{3-5}$$

with  $I$  given by (3-4).

*Proof.* The Taylor series of  $\Phi$  at  $q$  can be constructed inductively over the filtration  $\mathfrak{h}^j$  as indicated above. At the  $j$ -th stage, the terms of weighted homogeneity  $j$  can be removed from  $p$  except for those in the null space of  $\{\{p_0, .\}\}$ , that is, the resonant terms with  $R_{a,\alpha,\beta} = 0$ . This leads to (3-5) in the sense of formal power series. However, by use of Borel’s Lemma a local contact diffeomorphism can be found giving (3-5).  $\square$

Now a small extension of Nelson’s proof of Sternberg’s linearization theorem can be used to remove the infinite order vanishing error along the unstable manifold, that is, at  $v = 0, \mu = 0, y'' = 0, y''' = 0$ .

**Proposition 3.7.** *Suppose that  $X$  and  $X_0$  are  $\mathcal{C}^\infty$  vector fields on  $\mathbb{R}^N$  with  $X_0(0) = 0$  and  $X_1 = X - X_0$  vanishing to infinite order at 0. Suppose also that they are both linear outside a compact set and equal there to their common linearization,  $DX(0)$ , at 0 which is assumed to have no pure imaginary eigenvalue. Let  $U(t), U_0(t)$  be the flows generated by  $X$  and  $X_0$ . If  $E$  is a linear submanifold invariant under  $X_0$  such that*

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} U_0(t)x = 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in E \tag{3-6}$$

then for all  $j = 0, 1, 2, \dots$  and  $x \in E$

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} D^j(U(-t)U_0(t))x \tag{3-7}$$

exists, and is continuous in  $x \in E$ , and

$$W_-x = \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} U(-t)U_0(t)x, \quad x \in E$$

has a  $\mathcal{C}^\infty$  extension,  $G$ , to  $\mathbb{R}^N$  which is the identity to infinite order at 0 and such that  $(G^{-1})_*X = X_0$  to infinite order along  $E$  in a neighbourhood of 0.

**Remark 3.8.** Note that the derivatives  $D^j$  in (3-7) refer to the ambient space  $\mathbb{R}^N$ , and not merely to  $E$ . This is useful in producing the Taylor series of  $G$  for the last part of the conclusion.

Also, the limit  $t \rightarrow \infty$  means  $t \rightarrow +\infty$ , as in Nelson’s book.

*Proof.* We follow the proof of Theorem 8 in [Nelson 1969]. Indeed, if  $X_0$  was assumed to be linear then Nelson’s theorem would apply directly. Dropping this assumption has little effect on the proof; the main difference is that a little more work is required to show the exponential contraction property, (3-8) below.

Since the real part of every eigenvalue of  $DX(0)$  is nonzero,  $\mathbb{R}^N = E_+ \oplus E_-$  where  $E_+$ , respectively  $E_-$ , is the direct sum of the generalized eigenspaces of  $DX(0)$  with eigenvalues with positive, respectively negative, real parts. Since  $E$  is invariant under  $X_0$ , and hence under  $DX(0)$ , necessarily  $E \subset E_-$ . We actually apply the theorem with  $E = E_-$ , but, as in Nelson’s discussion, the more general case is useful for the inductive argument for the derivatives.

Let  $e_j$  denote a basis of  $E_-$  consisting of generalized eigenvectors of  $DX(0)$  with corresponding eigenvalue  $\sigma_j$ ; we shall consider the  $e_j$  as differentials of linear functions  $f_j$  on  $\mathbb{R}^N$ . For  $x \in \mathbb{R}^N$ , let  $x(t) = U_0(t)x$ ,  $F_j(t) = f_j(x(t))$ . Then  $dF_j/dt|_{t=t_0} = (X_0f_j)(x(t_0))$  where

$$X_0f_j(y) = DX(0)f_j(y) + \mathcal{O}(\|y\|^2).$$

Moreover, for  $y \in E_-$ ,  $\|y\|^2 \leq C_1 \sum_j f_j^2$  for some  $C_1 > 0$ . So, setting  $\rho = \sum f_j^2$ , we deduce that

$$X_0\rho(y) = \sum_j 2\sigma_j f_j^2(y) + \mathcal{O}(\rho(y)^{3/2}),$$

hence with  $R(t) = \rho(x(t))$ ,  $c_0 \in (\sup \sigma_j, 0)$ , there exists  $\delta > 0$  such that for  $\|R(t)\| \leq \delta$ ,

$$\frac{dR}{dt} - 2c_0R \leq 0,$$

and hence  $R(t) \leq e^{-2c_0t} \|x\|$  for  $t \geq 0$ ,  $\|r(x)\| \leq \delta$ ,  $x \in E_-$ . A corresponding estimate also holds outside a compact set, as  $X_0$  is given by  $DX(0)$  there, so a patching argument and (3-6) yield the estimate  $R(t) \leq C_0 e^{-2c_0t} \|x\|$  for all  $x \in E_-$ . Since  $R(t)^{1/2}$  is equivalent to  $\|\cdot\|$ , we deduce that there are constants  $C, c > 0$  such that

$$\|U_0(t)x\| \leq C e^{-ct} \|x\| \quad \forall x \in E \text{ and } t \geq 0. \tag{3-8}$$

For the remainder of the argument we can follow Nelson’s proof even more closely. Thus, let  $\kappa$  be a Lipschitz constant for  $X$  and  $X_0$ , and choose  $m$  such that  $cm > \kappa$ . Note that there exists  $c_0 > 0$  such that

for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}^N$ ,

$$\|X_1(x)\| \leq c_0 \|x\|^m, \quad X_1 = X - X_0. \tag{3-9}$$

For  $t_1 \geq t_2 \geq 0$ ,  $t_1 = t_2 + t$ ,  $x \in E$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \|U(-t_1)U_0(t_1)x - U(-t_2)U_0(t_2)x\| = \|U(-t_2)(U(-t)U_0(t) - \text{Id})U_0(t_2)x\| \\ &\leq e^{\kappa t_2} \| (U(-t)U_0(t) - \text{Id})U_0(t_2)x \| \end{aligned}$$

by the Lipschitz condition (see [Nelson 1969, Theorem 5]). But with  $X = X_0 + X_1$ , by [Nelson 1969, Proof of Theorem 6, (5)]

$$\|U(-t)U_0(t)y - y\| \leq \int_0^t e^{\kappa s} \|X_1(U_0(s)y)\| ds.$$

Applying this with  $y = U_0(t_2)x$ , we deduce that

$$I \leq e^{\kappa t_2} \int_0^t e^{\kappa s} \|X_1(U_0(s+t_2)x)\| ds. \tag{3-10}$$

Thus, by (3-9) and (3-8),

$$I \leq e^{\kappa t_2} \int_0^t e^{\kappa s} c_0 C^m e^{-cm(s+t_2)} \|x\|^m ds \leq e^{\kappa t_2} \int_0^\infty e^{\kappa s} c_0 C^m e^{-cm(s+t_2)} \|x\|^m ds = \frac{c_0 C^m e^{-(cm-\kappa)t_2} \|x\|^m}{cm - \kappa}.$$

Letting  $t_2 \rightarrow \infty$  shows that  $W_-x = \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} U(-t)U_0(t)x$  exists, with convergence uniform on compact sets, hence  $W_-$  is continuous in  $x \in E$ . Moreover, applying the estimate with  $t_2 = 0$  shows that  $W_-(x) - x = \mathcal{O}(\|x\|^m)$ . Since  $m$  is arbitrary, as long as it is sufficiently large, this shows that  $W_-$  is the identity to infinite order at 0, provided it is smooth, as we proceed to show.

Smoothness can be seen by a similar argument, although we need to put a slight twist into Nelson’s argument. Namely, first consider the first derivatives, or rather the 1-jet. Thus, we work on  $\mathbb{R}^N \oplus \mathcal{L}(\mathbb{R}^N)$ . Let  $(x, \xi)$  denote the components with respect to this decomposition. These evolve under the flow  $U'(t)$ , respectively  $U'_0(t)$ , given by

$$X'(x, \xi) = (X(x), DX(x) \cdot \xi), \quad X'_0(x, \xi) = (X_0(x), DX_0(x) \cdot \xi),$$

where  $DX(x)$  and  $\xi$  are considered as elements of  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbb{R}^N)$ , and  $\cdot$  is composition of operators. Note that the second,  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbb{R}^N)$ , component of these vector fields is a homogeneous degree zero vector field, that is, it is invariant under pushforward by the natural  $\mathbb{R}^+$ -action (by dilations).

The twist, as compared to Nelson’s work, is that we identify  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbb{R}^N)$  with  $\mathbb{R}^{N^2}$ , which we radially compactify to a (closed) ball  $B^{N^2}$ , which we further embed as the closed unit ball in  $\mathbb{R}^{N^2}$  in such a fashion that the smooth structure of the ball agrees with the restriction of the smooth structure from  $\mathbb{R}^{N^2}$ . Let  $\iota : \mathbb{R}^{N^2} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{N^2}$  be this map with range the interior of  $B^{N^2}$ . Then the pushforward under  $\iota$  of a homogeneous degree zero vector field, such as  $DX(x) \cdot \xi$  is for each  $x \in \mathbb{R}^N$ , extends to a  $\mathcal{C}^\infty$  vector field on the closed ball  $B^{N^2}$ , which by homogeneity is tangent to the boundary. Furthermore, if  $\iota_1 = \text{id}_{\mathbb{R}^N} \times \iota$ , then  $(\iota_1)_* X'$  and  $(\iota_1)_* X'_0$  extend to  $\mathcal{C}^\infty$  vector field on  $\mathbb{R}^N \times B^{N^2}$  tangent to the boundary and their difference,  $(\iota_1)_* X'_1$ , in addition vanishes to infinite order at  $\{0\} \times B^{N^2}$ . Thus  $(\iota_1)_* X'$  and  $(\iota_1)_* X'_0$  are Lipschitz with some Lipschitz constant  $\kappa'$ : this is automatic over a compact subset of  $\mathbb{R}^N \times B^{N^2}$ , which

in fact suffices here, but in fact holds on all of  $\mathbb{R}^N \times B^{N^2}$  since outside the inverse image of a compact subset of  $\mathbb{R}^N \times B^{N^2}$ ,  $X'$  and  $X'_0$  are linear, so in particular their  $B^{N^2}$  component is independent of  $x$ .

To minimize confusion about the “change of coordinates”, we write the coordinates on  $\mathbb{R}^N \times B^{N^2}$  as  $(x, \eta)$  below. With  $c$  as in (3–8), choose  $m$  such that  $cm > \kappa'$ . Then the infinite order vanishing of  $(\iota_1)_*X'_1$  at  $x = 0$  yields

$$\|((\iota_1)_*X'_1)(x, \eta)\| \leq c'_0 \|x\|^m$$

for all  $(x, \eta)$ . Let  $U'(t), U'_0(t)$  denote the evolution groups generated by  $(\iota_1)_*X'$  and  $(\iota_1)_*X'_0$ , respectively. Thus, for all real  $t$ ,

$$\|U'(t)(x, \eta)\| \leq e^{\kappa' t} \|(x, \eta)\|, \tag{3–11}$$

see [Nelson 1969, Theorem 5]. So (3–10) still applies, with  $X_1$  replaced by  $(\iota_1)_*X'_1$ ,  $\kappa$  replaced by  $\kappa'$ , etc. Thus, by (3–8) and (3–11),

$$\begin{aligned} I' &= \|U'(-t_1)U'_0(t_1)(x, \eta) - U'(-t_2)U'_0(t_2)(x, \eta)\| \\ &\leq e^{\kappa' t_2} \int_0^{t_2} e^{\kappa' s} \|((\iota_1)_*X'_1)(U'_0(s+t_2)(x, \eta))\| ds \\ &\leq e^{\kappa' t_2} \int_0^{t_2} e^{\kappa' s} c'_0 C^m e^{-cm(s+t_2)} \|x\|^m ds \\ &\leq e^{\kappa' t_2} \int_0^\infty e^{\kappa' s} c'_0 C^m e^{-cm(s+t_2)} \|x\|^m ds = \frac{c'_0 C^m e^{-(cm-\kappa')t_2} \|x\|^m}{cm - \kappa'}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} U'(-t)U'_0(t)x$  exists, with convergence uniform on compact sets, so the limit depends continuously on  $(x, \xi)$  for  $x \in E$ .

The higher derivatives can be handled similarly. The resulting Taylor series about  $E$  can be summed asymptotically, giving  $G$ : this part of the argument of Nelson is unchanged.  $\square$

**3.3. Effective resonance and nonresonance.** Next we apply this general result to the symbol  $p$ . Following Lemma 2.7, when resonances occur we cannot remove all error terms even in the sense of formal power series. Consequently we do not attempt to get a full normal form in a neighbourhood of the critical point, but only along the submanifold

$$S = \{v = 0, y'' = 0, y''' = 0, \mu = 0\}, \tag{3–12}$$

which is the unstable manifold for  $W_0$ . After reduction to normal form, errors which are polynomial in the normal directions to  $S$  will remain. For later purposes, we divide these into two parts.

**Definition 3.9.** With  $I$  as in Definition 3.5, let

$$\begin{aligned} I_{\text{er}} &= I'_{\text{er}} \cup I''_{\text{er}} \\ I'_{\text{er}} &= \{(a, \alpha, \beta) \in I : \alpha = (\alpha', \alpha'', \alpha'''), \beta = (\beta', \beta'', \beta'''), a = 0, \alpha''' = 0, \beta''' = 0, \alpha'' = 0, \beta'' = 0, |\beta'| = 1\}, \\ I''_{\text{er}} &= \{(a, \alpha, \beta) \in I : \alpha = (\alpha', \alpha'', \alpha'''), \beta = (\beta', \beta'', \beta'''), a = 0, \alpha''' = 0, \beta''' = 0, \alpha' = 0, \beta' = 0\}. \end{aligned} \tag{3–13}$$

An *effectively resonant* function is a polynomial of the form

$$r_{\text{er}} = \sum_{(a, \alpha, \beta) \in I_{\text{er}}} c_{a, \alpha, \beta} p_0^a e^\alpha f^\beta,$$

or equivalently

$$r_{\text{er}} = \sum_{(a, \alpha, \beta) \in I_{\text{er}}} c_{a, \alpha, \beta} v^a e^{\alpha} f^{\beta}.$$

Thus, elements of  $I_{\text{er}}$  satisfy  $(0, \alpha, \beta) \in I$  (that is, are resonant; see Definition 3.5), with  $\alpha = (\alpha', \alpha'', 0)$ ,  $\beta = (\beta', \beta'', 0)$ , and either  $\alpha'' = 0, \beta'' = 0, |\beta'| = 1$ , or  $\alpha' = 0, \beta' = 0$ .

Moreover, an effectively resonant function has the form

$$\sum_{\alpha', |\beta'|=1} c_{\alpha' \beta'} (e')^{\alpha'} (f')^{\beta'} + \sum_{\alpha'', \beta''} c_{\alpha'' \beta''} (e'')^{\alpha''} (f'')^{\beta''}. \tag{3-14}$$

For a fixed critical point of a fixed operator  $P$  (for example,  $P = x^{-1}(\Delta + V - \sigma)$  for a fixed  $\sigma$ ), the set  $I_{\text{er}}$  is finite. Thus, only a finite number of terms can occur in (3-14), and hence restricting to polynomials in the definition of effectively resonant functions (rather than infinite formal sums) is in fact not a restriction. To see this, note that in the expression for  $R_{a, \alpha, \beta}$  in (3-4), we have  $a = 0, \alpha''' = \beta''' = 0$  and either (i)  $\alpha'' = \beta'' = 0$  and  $|\beta'| = 1$  or (ii)  $\alpha' = \beta' = 0$ . In case (i), if  $\beta'_j = 1$  then to have  $R_{a, \alpha, \beta} = 0$  we need  $\sum \alpha'_k r'_k = r'_j$ , which is only possible for  $|\alpha'_k| \leq |r'_j| / \min_k |r'_k|$ . In case (ii), we need  $\sum \alpha'_j r'_j + \sum \beta''_j (1 - r''_j) = 1$ , which is only possible for  $|\alpha''| \leq 1 / \min r''_k$  and  $|\beta''| \leq 2$ . (Actually in case (ii) we must have  $|\beta''| \leq 1$  in order to satisfy the condition  $2a + |\alpha| + |\beta| \geq 3$  in (3-4).)

**Definition 3.10.** Let  $\mathcal{F}_S$  denote the ideal of  $\mathcal{C}^\infty$  functions on  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^* X$  which vanish on  $S$  and set

$$J'' = \left\{ (\alpha'', \beta''); \sum_{j=s}^{m-1} r''_j \alpha''_j + (1 - r''_j) \beta''_j \in (1, 2) \right\}.$$

An *effectively nonresonant* function is an element of  $\mathcal{F}_S$  of the form

$$r_{\text{enr}} = \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} h_j f'_j + \sum_{(\alpha'', \beta'') \in I''} h''_{\alpha'', \beta''} e^{\alpha''} f^{\beta''} + \sum_{j,k} h'''_{jk} e'''_j f'''_k$$

$$h_j \in \mathcal{F}_S, \quad j = 0, 1, \dots, s, \quad h''_{\alpha'', \beta''} \in \mathcal{C}^\infty({}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^* X), \quad (\alpha'', \beta'') \in I'',$$

$$h'''_{jk} \in \mathcal{F}_S, \quad j, k = m, \dots, n-1. \tag{3-15}$$

Note that  $J''$  is finite, hence all sums in the definition are finite.

**Theorem 3.11.** *Using the notation of Lemma 2.7 for coordinates near a radial point of  $q$  of  $p$  there is a local contact diffeomorphism  $\Phi$  from a neighbourhood of  $(0, 0, \dots, 0)$  to a neighbourhood of  $q$  such that  $\Phi^* p = p_{\text{norm}}$  such that*

$$\lambda^{-1} p_{\text{norm}} = -v + \sum_j r_j y_j \mu_j + \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} Q_j(y_j, \mu_j) + r_{\text{enr}} + r_{\text{er}}, \tag{3-16}$$

with  $r_{\text{enr}}$  of the form (3-15) and  $r_{\text{er}}$  of the form (3-14); in addition at a nonresonant critical point, that is, if  $I = \emptyset$ , then we may take  $r_{\text{enr}} = r_{\text{er}} = 0$  near  $q$ .

**Remark 3.12.** If  $F$  is an elliptic Fourier integral operator with canonical relation  $\Phi$  then  $\tilde{P} = F^{-1} P F$  satisfies  $\sigma_{\partial, -1}(\tilde{P}) = p_{\text{norm}}$ .



**Remark 3.13.** As will be seen below, of the two error terms, only  $r_{\text{er}}$  has any effect on the leading asymptotics of microlocal solutions. The construction below shows that modulo  $\mathcal{F}^\infty$ ,  $r_{\text{enr}}$  may be chosen to consist of resonant terms only, that is, to be an asymptotic sum of resonant terms. However, this plays no role in the paper; all the relevant information is contained in the statement of the theorem.

**Remark 3.14.** We do not need the full power of Lemma 2.7 to find  $\Phi$  as in this theorem; Lemma 2.10 suffices. Indeed, the terms  $\sum_{j=1}^{m-1} c_j \mu_j^2$  in (2–8) can be absorbed in  $r_{\text{enr}}$ .

Similarly any term  $v^a \mu^\beta y^\alpha$  with  $a + |\beta| \geq 2$  and  $a \neq 0$ , or with  $|\beta| \geq 3$  can be included in  $r_{\text{er}}$  or  $r_{\text{enr}}$ . The same is true for any term with  $|\beta| \geq 2$  such that  $\beta_j \neq 0$  for some  $j$  with  $\text{Re } r_j \neq \frac{1}{2}$ . In particular, if  $\text{Re } r_j \neq \frac{1}{2}$  for any  $j$ , the only terms which need to be removed have  $a + |\beta| \leq 1$ . The conjugating Fourier integral operator can therefore also be arranged to have such terms only and thus to be of the form  $e^{iB}$ , with  $B = Z + (f/x)$  where  $Z$  is a vector field on  $X$  tangent to its boundary and  $f$  is a real valued smooth function on  $X$ . Correspondingly, the normal form may be achieved by conjugation of  $P$  by an oscillatory function,  $e^{if/x}$ , followed by pullback by a local diffeomorphism of  $X$ , that is, a change of coordinates. However, if  $\text{Re } r_j = \frac{1}{2}$  for some  $j$ , some quadratic terms in  $\mu$  would also need to be removed for the model form, but since they play a role analogous to  $r_{\text{er}}$ , the arguments of Section 5, giving conormality, are unaffected, and only the polyhomogeneous statements of Section 6 would need alterations. However, the contact diffeomorphism (that is, FIO conjugation) approach we present here is both more unified and more concise.

If  $p = |\zeta|^2 + V_0 - \sigma$ , the model form of Lemma 2.10 also only required a change of coordinates and multiplication by an oscillatory function (see Lemma 2.11), the model form of this theorem can be obtained by these two operations, starting from the original operator  $P$  with symbol  $p$ .

*Proof.* First we apply Proposition 3.6. Next we need to show that  $r_{\text{er}}$  as in (3–14) and  $r_{\text{enr}}$  as in (3–14) can be chosen to have Taylor series at 0 given exactly by the error term in (3–5).

So, consider a monomial  $v^a e^\alpha f^\beta$  with  $(a, \alpha, \beta) \in I$ . If  $\alpha''' \neq 0$  then  $\beta''' \neq 0$  since  $\text{Im } r_j''' > 0$ , and only the eigenvalues of  $f_j'''$  have negative imaginary parts, and conversely. In addition,  $2a + |\alpha| + |\beta| \geq 3$  implies that a monomial with  $\alpha''' \neq 0$  or  $\beta''' \neq 0$  has the form  $v^a e^{\tilde{\alpha}} f^{\tilde{\beta}} e_j''' f_k'''$  for some  $j, k$  with  $2a + |\tilde{\alpha}| + |\tilde{\beta}| \geq 1$  and

$$\text{Re}(a + \sum r_l \tilde{\alpha}_l + \sum (1 - r_l) \tilde{\beta}_l) = 0.$$

Since  $\text{Re}(1 - r_l) > 0$  for all  $l$  and  $\text{Re } r_l > 0$  for  $l \geq s$ , while  $r_l < 0$  for  $l \leq s - 1$ , we must have  $\tilde{\alpha}' \neq 0$  (that is,  $\tilde{\alpha}_l \neq 0$  for some  $l \leq s - 1$ ) and correspondingly  $a + |\tilde{\alpha}''| + |\tilde{\alpha}'''| + |\tilde{\beta}| > 0$ . Due to the latter,  $v^a e^{\tilde{\alpha}} f^{\tilde{\beta}}$  vanishes on  $S$ , so the terms with  $\alpha''' \neq 0$  or  $\beta''' \neq 0$  appear in  $r_{\text{enr}}$ .

So we may assume that  $\alpha''' = \beta''' = 0$ . If  $a \neq 0$ , the monomial is of the form  $v^{\tilde{a}} e^{\tilde{\alpha}} f^{\tilde{\beta}} v$ ,  $\tilde{a} = a - 1$ ,  $2\tilde{a} + |\tilde{\alpha}| + |\tilde{\beta}| \geq 1$  with

$$\tilde{a} + \sum r_j \tilde{\alpha}_j + \sum (1 - r_j) \tilde{\beta}_j = 0.$$

Arguing as in the previous paragraph we deduce that the terms with  $a \neq 0$  also appear in  $r_{\text{enr}}$ .

So we may now assume that  $a = 0$ ,  $\alpha''' = \beta''' = 0$ . If  $\beta' \neq 0$ , the monomial is of the form  $v^a e^{\tilde{\alpha}} f^{\tilde{\beta}} f_j$  for some  $j$ , and  $2a + |\tilde{\alpha}| + |\tilde{\beta}| \geq 2$ ,

$$a + \sum r_l \tilde{\alpha}_l + \sum (1 - r_l) \tilde{\beta}_l = r_j < 0.$$

We can still conclude that  $\tilde{\alpha}' \neq 0$ , but it is not automatic that  $a + |\tilde{\alpha}''| + |\tilde{\beta}| > 0$ . However, if  $a + |\tilde{\alpha}''| + |\tilde{\beta}| > 0$  then  $v^a e^{\tilde{\alpha}} f^{\tilde{\beta}} f_j$  is again included in  $r_{\text{enr}}$ , while if  $a + |\tilde{\alpha}''| + |\tilde{\beta}| = 0$ , then the monomial is included in  $r_{\text{er}}$ .

Finally then, we may assume that  $a = 0, \beta' = 0, \alpha''' = \beta''' = 0$ . Since  $r'_j < 0$  for all  $j = 1, \dots, s - 1$

$$\sum (r''_j \alpha''_j + (1 - r''_j) \beta''_j) \geq \sum r'_j \alpha'_j + \sum (r'_j \alpha''_j + (1 - r'_j) \beta''_j) = 1.$$

Moreover, the equality holds if and only if  $\alpha' = 0$ , in which case this term is included in  $r_{\text{er}}$ . The terms with  $\alpha' \neq 0$  can be included in  $h''_{\tilde{\alpha}'', \tilde{\beta}''} e^{\tilde{\alpha}''} f^{\tilde{\beta}''}$  for some  $\tilde{\alpha}'' \leq \alpha'', \tilde{\beta}'' \leq \beta''$ , chosen by reducing  $\alpha''$  and/or  $\beta''$  to make

$$\sum (r''_j \tilde{\alpha}''_j + (1 - r''_j) \tilde{\beta}''_j) \in (1, 2).$$

This can be done since  $r''_j, 1 - r''_j \in (0, 1)$ .

It follows that  $\lambda^{-1} p$  can be conjugated to the form

$$-v + \sum_j r_j y_j \mu_j + \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} Q_j(y_j, \mu_j) + r_{\text{enr}} + r_{\text{er}} + r_{\infty}, \tag{3-17}$$

where  $r_{\text{enr}}, r_{\text{er}}$  are as in (3-15), (3-14), with both vanishing if  $q$  is nonresonant, and  $r_{\infty}$  vanishes to infinite order at  $(0, 0, 0)$ . Thus, it remains to show that we can remove the  $r_{\infty}$  term in a neighbourhood of the origin.

To do this we apply Proposition 3.7. Let  $X'$  be the Legendre vector field of (3-17), and let  $X'_1$  be the Legendre vector field of  $r_{\infty}$ , while  $X'_0 = X' - X'_1$ . Let  $\tilde{X}$  be the linear vector field with differential equal to  $DX(0)$ , let  $\chi$  be compactly supported, identically 1 near 0, and let  $X = -(\chi X' + (1 - \chi)\tilde{X})$ ,  $X_0 = -(\chi X'_0 + (1 - \chi)\tilde{X})$ . The overall minus sign is due to  $S$  being the unstable manifold of  $X'_0$  near the origin, hence the stable manifold of  $-X'_0$ . Let  $E$  be the subspace  $S$  of  $\mathbb{R}^{2n-1}$ , defined by (3-12). Then Proposition 3.7 is applicable, and  $G$  given by it may be chosen as a contact diffeomorphism since  $U(t), U_0(t)$  are such; see [Guillemin and Schaeffer 1977, Section 3, Theorem 4].  $\square$

**3.4. Parameter-dependent normal form.** We also need a parameter-dependent version of this theorem. Namely, suppose that  $p$  depends smoothly on a parameter  $\sigma$ , can we make the normal form depend smoothly on  $\sigma$  as well? This problem can be approached in at least two different ways. One can consider  $\sigma$  simply as a parameter, so  $p \in \mathcal{C}^\infty((\partial^{\text{sc}} T^* X) \times I) = \mathcal{C}^\infty({}^{\text{sc}} T^*_{\partial X} X \times I)$  and then try to carry out the reduction to normal form uniformly. Alternatively, one identify  $p$  with the function  $p'$  on the larger space  $\partial^{\text{sc}} T^*(X \times I)$  arising by the pullback under the natural projection

$$p' = \pi^* p, \quad \pi : {}^{\text{sc}} T^*_{\partial X \times I}(X \times I) \rightarrow ({}^{\text{sc}} T^*_{\partial X} X) \times I$$

and then carry out the reduction to a model on the larger space. Whilst the second approach may be more natural from a geometric stance, we will adopt the first, since it is closer to the point of view of spectral theory of [Hassell et al. 2004]. Clearly the difficulty in obtaining a uniform normal form is particularly acute near a value of  $\sigma$  at which the effectively resonant terms do not vanish. Fortunately in the case of central interest here, and in other cases too, the set of points at which such problems arise is discrete.

**Lemma 3.15.** *If  $P = P(\sigma) = x^{-1}(\Delta + V - \sigma)$ ,  $q = q(\sigma)$  is a radial point of  $P$  lying over the critical point  $z = \pi(q)$  of  $V_0$  and  $I(\sigma)$ , respectively  $I_{\text{er}}(\sigma)$ , are the sets (3-4), respectively (3-13), for  $p(\sigma)$  then*

the set  $\mathcal{R}_z = \mathcal{R}_{\text{Ht},z} \cup \mathcal{R}_{\text{er},z}$ , defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{R}_{\text{Ht},z} &= \left\{ \sigma \in (V_0(z), +\infty) \mid \exists j \text{ such that } r_j = \frac{1}{2} \right\}, \\ \mathcal{R}_{\text{er},z} &= \left\{ \sigma \in (V_0(z), +\infty) \mid I_{\text{er}}(\sigma) \neq \emptyset \right\}, \end{aligned}$$

that is, the set of energies  $\sigma$  which are either a Hessian threshold (see Lemma 2.7) or such that  $q(\sigma)$  has a nontrivial effectively resonant error term (see Definition 3.9), is discrete in  $(V_0(\pi(q)), +\infty)$ .

**Remark 3.16.** It follows that if  $K \subset (V_0(z), +\infty)$  is compact then  $K \cap \mathcal{R}_z$  is finite. Thus, to prove properties such as asymptotic completeness, one can ignore all  $\sigma \in K$  which are Hessian thresholds or effectively resonant.

Note also that by the definition of  $I_{\text{er}}(\sigma)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{R}_{\text{er},z} = \left\{ \sigma \in (V_0(z), +\infty) \mid \text{either } \exists (0, (\alpha', 0, 0), (\beta', 0, 0)) \in I(\sigma) \text{ with } |\beta'| = 1 \right. \\ \left. \text{or } \exists (0, (0, \alpha'', 0), (0, \beta'', 0)) \in I(\sigma) \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* Using Remark 2.9, the set  $\mathcal{R}_{\text{Ht},z}$  of Hessian thresholds is given by  $\{V_0(z) + 4a_j\}$  where  $a_j$  is an eigenvalue of the Hessian of  $V_0$  at  $z$  and hence has cardinality at most  $n - 1$ , so this set is trivially discrete.

Let  $K$  be a compact subset of  $(V_0(z), +\infty)$ . The set  $K \cap \mathcal{R}_{\text{er},z}$  of effectively resonant energies in  $K$  is the union of zeros of a finite number of analytic functions (none of which are identically zero). Indeed,  $\mathcal{R}_{\text{er},z}$  is given by the union of the set of zeros of the countable collection of functions

$$-1 + \sum_{j=s}^{m-1} \alpha'_j r''_j(\sigma) + \beta'_j (1 - r''_j(\sigma)), \quad -1 + (1 - r_k) + \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} \alpha'_j r'_j(\sigma)$$

as  $k = 1, \dots, s - 1$ , while  $\alpha', \alpha'', \beta''$  are multiindices. But if  $c > 0$  is large enough then  $c^{-1} > |r_j(\sigma)| > c$  for all  $j$  and for all  $\sigma \in K$  as  $K$  is compact and the  $r_j$  do not vanish there. Correspondingly, for  $|\alpha'| > 2/c^2$ ,

$$-1 + (1 - r_k) + \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} \alpha'_j r'_j(\sigma) < -r_k - |\alpha'|c < -c^{-1},$$

and analogously for  $|\alpha''| + |\beta''| > 2/c$ ,

$$-1 + \sum_{j=s}^{m-1} \alpha''_j r''_j(\sigma) + \beta''_j (1 - r''_j(\sigma)) > -1 + (|\alpha''| + |\beta''|)c > 1.$$

Thus, there are only a finite number of these analytic functions that may vanish in  $K$ , as claimed.  $\square$

If  $q(\sigma)$  are the radial points corresponding to  $z \in \text{Cv}(V)$ , and  $\sigma \notin \mathcal{R}_{\text{er},z}$ , then we will say that  $q(\sigma)$  is effectively nonresonant, or that  $\sigma$  is an effectively nonresonant energy for  $z$ . We now prove that, away from effectively resonant energies and Hessian thresholds, we have a normal form for  $p(\sigma)$  of the form (3–16) with  $r_{\text{er}} = 0$  and depending smoothly on  $\sigma$ . Thus, for a given critical point  $z$  of  $V_0$ , consider an open interval  $O \subset (V_0(z), +\infty) \setminus \mathcal{R}_z$ . Apart from the coefficients  $h_j, h''_{\alpha'', \beta''}$ , etc., in (3–15) the only part

of the model form depending on  $\sigma$  is

$$J''(\sigma) = \left\{ (\alpha'', \beta''); \sum_{j=s}^{m-1} r_j''(\sigma) \alpha_j'' + (1 - r_j''(\sigma)) \beta_j'' \in (1, 2) \right\}.$$

We note that on compact subsets  $K$  of  $O$ , there is a  $c > 0$  such that  $r_j''(\sigma) > c$  for  $\sigma \in K$ , and then for  $|\alpha''| + |\beta''| > 2c^{-1}$ ,

$$\mathfrak{s}_{\alpha'' \beta''}(\sigma) = \sum_{j=s}^{m-1} r_j''(\sigma) \alpha_j'' + (1 - r_j''(\sigma)) \beta_j'' > 2,$$

so if we let

$$J_K = \bigcup_{\sigma \in K} J''(\sigma),$$

then  $J_K$  is a finite set of multiindices. For each multiindex  $(\alpha'', \beta'')$  we let

$$O_{\alpha'', \beta''} = \mathfrak{s}_{\alpha'' \beta''}^{-1}((1, 2)), \tag{3-18}$$

which is thus an open subset of  $O$ .

For the parameter dependent version of the Theorem 3.11 we introduce

$$\mathcal{S} = \{(y, v, \mu, \sigma); v = 0, y'' = 0, y''' = 0, \mu = 0, \sigma \in O\},$$

in place of  $S$  (3-12).

**Theorem 3.17.** *Suppose that  $p \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\text{sc}T_{\partial X}^* X \times O)$ ,  $O \subset (V_0(z), +\infty) \setminus \mathcal{R}_z$  is open, that the symplectic map  $S$  induced by the linearization  $A'$  of  $p$  at  $q(\sigma)$  (see Lemma 2.3) can be smoothly decomposed (as a function of  $\sigma \in O$ ) into two-dimensional invariant symplectic subspaces and that there exists  $c > 0$  such that  $r_j''(\sigma) \geq c$  for  $\sigma \in O$ . Then  $\Phi(\sigma)$  and  $F(\sigma)$  can be chosen smoothly in  $\sigma$  so that  $p_{\text{norm}}(\sigma) = \sigma_1(\tilde{P}(\sigma))$ ,  $\tilde{P}(\sigma) = F(\sigma)^{-1} P(\sigma) F(\sigma)$ , is of the form in Theorem 3.11, with  $r_{\text{er}} \equiv 0$ , with the sum over  $J''$  replaced by a locally finite sum (the sum is over  $J_K$  over compact subsets  $K \subset O$ ), the  $h_j$ , etc., in (3-15) depending smoothly on  $\sigma$ , that is, they are in  $\mathcal{C}^\infty(\text{sc}T_{\partial X}^* X \times O)$ , vanishing at  $\mathcal{S}$  as in Theorem 3.11, and with the  $h''_{\alpha'' \beta''}$  supported in  $\text{sc}T_{\partial X}^* X \times O_{\alpha'' \beta''}$  in terms of (3-18).*

**Remark 3.18.** For  $P = x^{-1}(\Delta + V - \sigma)$  the conditions of the theorem are satisfied for any bounded  $O = I$  disjoint from the discrete set of effectively resonant  $\sigma$ , since in local coordinates  $(y, \mu)$  on  $\Sigma(\sigma)$ , the eigenspaces of  $S$  are independent of  $\sigma$  as shown in the proof of Lemma 2.5, and the  $r_j''$  are bounded below by Remark 2.9.

*Proof.* Since the invariant subspaces depend smoothly on  $\sigma$  by assumption, so do the eigenvalues of the linearization, and there is smooth family of local contact diffeomorphisms, that is, coordinate changes, under which  $p(\sigma)$  takes the form (2-7), that is,

$$p(\sigma) = \lambda(\sigma) \left( -v + \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} r_j(\sigma) y_j \mu_j + \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} Q_j(\sigma, y_j, \mu_j) + v g_1 + g_2 \right)$$

the  $Q_j(\sigma, \cdot)$ , are homogeneous polynomials of degree 2,  $g_1$  vanishes at least linearly and  $g_2$  to third order, all depending smoothly on  $\sigma$ .

For the rest of the argument it is convenient to reduce the size of the parameter set  $O$  as follows. For  $\sigma \in O$ , let

$$\widehat{O}(\sigma) = \left( \bigcap_{\substack{(\alpha'', \beta''):\\ \mathfrak{s}_{\alpha'', \beta''}(\sigma) \in (1, 2)}} \mathfrak{s}_{\alpha'', \beta''}^{-1}((1, 2)) \right) \cap \left( \bigcap_{\substack{(\alpha'', \beta''):\\ \mathfrak{s}_{\alpha'', \beta''}(\sigma) \in (-\infty, 1)}} \mathfrak{s}_{\alpha'', \beta''}^{-1}((-\infty, 1)) \right), \quad (3-19)$$

an open set (as it is a finite intersection of open sets) that includes  $\sigma$ . Thus,  $\{\widehat{O}(\sigma) : \sigma \in O\}$  is an open cover of  $O$ . Take a locally finite subcover and a partition of unity subordinate to it. It suffices now to show the theorem for each element  $\widehat{O}(\sigma_0)$  of the subcover in place of  $O$ , for we can then paste together the models  $p_{\text{norm}}$  we thus obtain using the partition of unity. Thus, we may assume that  $O = \widehat{O}(\sigma_0)$  for some  $\sigma_0 \in O$ , and prove the theorem with the sum over  $J''$  replaced by a sum over  $J''(\sigma_0)$ . Hence, on  $O$ , for any  $(\alpha'', \beta'')$  either

- (a)  $\mathfrak{s}_{\alpha'' \beta''}(\sigma_0) > 1$ , and then for some  $(\tilde{\alpha}'', \tilde{\beta}'') \in J''(\sigma_0)$ ,  $(\alpha'', \beta'') \geq (\tilde{\alpha}'', \tilde{\beta}'')$  (reduce  $|\alpha''| + |\beta''|$  until  $\mathfrak{s}_{\tilde{\alpha}'', \tilde{\beta}''} \in (1, 2)$  – this will happen as  $r_j \in (0, 1/2)$ ) hence  $\mathfrak{s}_{\alpha'' \beta''}(\sigma) \geq \mathfrak{s}_{\tilde{\alpha}'', \tilde{\beta}''}(\sigma) > 1$  for all  $\sigma \in O$  by the definition of  $\widehat{O}(\sigma_0)$ , or
- (b)  $\mathfrak{s}_{\alpha'' \beta''}(\sigma_0) < 1$ , and then  $\mathfrak{s}_{\alpha'' \beta''}(\sigma) < 1$  for all  $\sigma \in O$  by the definition of  $\widehat{O}(\sigma_0)$ .

In order to make  $\Phi(\sigma)$  smooth in  $\sigma$ , we slightly modify the construction of the local contact diffeomorphism  $\Phi_1(\sigma)$  in Proposition 3.6 so that for any given  $\sigma$  we do not necessarily remove every term we can (that is, which are nonresonant for that particular  $\sigma$ ). Namely, we choose the set  $I'$  of multiindices  $(a, \alpha, \beta)$  which we do not remove by  $\Phi_1(\sigma)$  so that  $I'$  is independent of  $\sigma$ , and such that  $I'$  contains every multiindex which is resonant for *some*  $\sigma \in O$ , that is,  $I' \supset \bigcup_{\sigma \in O} I(\sigma)$ , with  $I(\sigma)$  denoting the set of multiindices corresponding to resonant terms for  $p(\sigma)$ , as in Proposition 3.6. With any such choice of  $I'$ , the local contact diffeomorphism of Proposition 3.6,  $\Phi_1(\sigma)$ , can be chosen smoothly in  $\sigma$  such that  $\lambda^{-1} \Phi_1^* p$  is of the form

$$-v + \sum_{j=1}^m r_j(\sigma) y_j \mu_j + \sum_{j=m+1}^{n-1} Q_j(\sigma, y_j, \mu_j) + \sum_{I'} c_{a\alpha\beta}(\sigma) v^a e^\alpha f^\beta \text{ modulo } \mathcal{F}^\infty = \mathfrak{h}^\infty \text{ at } q,$$

with  $c_{a\alpha\beta}$  depending smoothly on  $\sigma$ .

The requirement  $I' \supset \bigcup_{\sigma \in O} I(\sigma)$  means that for  $(a, \alpha, \beta) \notin I'$ ,  $R_{a, \alpha, \beta}(\sigma)$  must not vanish for  $\sigma \in O$ . Here we recall that  $R_{a, \alpha, \beta}(\sigma)$  is the eigenvalue of  $\{\{p_0, \cdot\}\}$  defined by (3-3), namely

$$R_{a, \alpha, \beta}(\sigma) = \lambda \left( a - 1 + \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \alpha_j r_j(\sigma) + \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \beta_j (1 - r_j(\sigma)) \right). \quad (3-20)$$

Keeping this in mind, we choose  $I'$  by defining its complement  $(I')^c$  to consist of multiindices  $(a, \alpha, \beta)$  with  $2a + |\alpha| + |\beta| \geq 3$  such that either

- (i)  $a + |\beta'| = 1$  and  $\alpha'' = 0, \alpha''' = 0, \beta'' = 0, \beta''' = 0$ , or
- (ii)  $|\alpha'''| \geq 1, \beta''' = 0$ , or
- (iii)  $|\beta'''| \geq 1, \alpha''' = 0$ , or
- (iv)  $a = 0, \beta' = 0, |\alpha'''| + |\beta'''| = 2, \alpha'' = 0, \beta'' = 0$ , or
- (v)  $a = 0, \beta' = 0, \alpha''' = \beta''' = 0, \mathfrak{s}_{\alpha'' \beta''}(\sigma) < 1$  (for one, hence all,  $\sigma \in O$ , as remarked above).

We next show that multiindices in  $(I')^c$  are indeed nonresonant. In cases (ii)–(iii),  $\text{Im } R_{a,\alpha,\beta}(\sigma) \neq 0$  since the imaginary part of all terms in (3–20) (with nonzero imaginary part) has the same sign, and there is at least one term with nonzero imaginary part, so  $(a, \alpha, \beta)$  is nonresonant.

In case (v), the nonresonance follows from

$$\lambda^{-1} R_{a,\alpha,\beta}(\sigma) \leq -1 + \mathfrak{s}_{\alpha''\beta''}(\sigma) < 0,$$

since  $\lambda^{-1} R_{a,\alpha,\beta}(\sigma) = -1 + \mathfrak{s}_{\alpha''\beta''}(\sigma) + \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} \alpha_j r_j$ , and each term in the last summation is nonpositive.

In case (i), if  $a = 1, \beta' = 0$  then

$$\lambda^{-1} R_{a,\alpha,\beta}(\sigma) = \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} r_j \alpha_j < 0$$

since  $|\alpha'| \geq 1$  due to  $2a + |\alpha| + |\beta| \geq 3$ . Also in case (i), if  $a = 0, |\beta'| = 1$ , with say  $\beta_l = 1$ , then

$$\lambda^{-1} R_{a,\alpha,\beta}(\sigma) = -r_l + \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} \alpha_j r_j$$

which does not vanish since otherwise  $(a, \alpha, \beta)$  would be effectively resonant – it would correspond to one of the terms in the first summation in (3–14).

Finally, in case (iv),

$$\lambda^{-1} \text{Re } R_{a,\alpha,\beta}(\sigma) = \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} \alpha_j r_j < 0$$

since  $\alpha' \neq 0$  due to  $2a + |\alpha| + |\beta| \geq 3$ .

Thus, all terms corresponding to multiindices in  $(I')^c$  can be removed from  $p(\sigma)$  by a local contact diffeomorphism  $\Phi_1(\sigma)$  that is  $\mathcal{C}^\infty$  in  $\sigma$ . So we only need to remark that any term corresponding to a multiindex in  $I'$  can be absorbed into  $r_{\text{enr}}(\sigma)$ . In fact, such a multiindex has either

- (i)  $a + |\beta'| \geq 2$ , or
- (ii)  $a + |\beta'| = 1$  and  $|\alpha''| + |\alpha'''| + |\beta''| + |\beta'''| \geq 1$ , or
- (iii)  $|\alpha'''| + |\beta'''| \geq 3$  (with neither  $\alpha'''$  nor  $\beta'''$  zero), or
- (iv)  $a = 0, \beta' = 0, |\alpha'''| = 1, |\beta'''| = 1, |\alpha''| + |\beta''| \geq 1$ , or
- (v)  $a = 0, \beta' = 0, \alpha''' = 0, \beta''' = 0, \mathfrak{s}_{\alpha''\beta''} > 1$ .

The first two cases can be incorporated into the  $h_0$  or  $h_j$  terms in (3–15). The third and fourth ones can be incorporated into the  $h'''_{jk}$  term. Finally, in the fifth case, any infinite linear combination of these monomials can be written as

$$\sum_{(\tilde{\alpha}'', \tilde{\beta}'') \in J''(\sigma_0)} h''_{\tilde{\alpha}'', \tilde{\beta}''}(e'')^{\tilde{\alpha}''} (f'')^{\tilde{\beta}''},$$

as remarked in (a) after (3–19).

We thus obtain

$$\lambda(\sigma) \left( -\nu + \sum_j r_j(\sigma) y_j \mu_j + \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} Q_j(y_j, \mu_j) + r_{\text{enr}}(\sigma) + r_\infty \right),$$

with  $r_{\text{enr}}$  as in (3–15), and  $r_\infty$  vanishes to infinite order at  $(0, 0, 0)$ . Finally, we can remove the  $r_\infty$  term in a neighbourhood of the origin, smoothly in  $\sigma$ , using Proposition 3.7 as in the proof of Theorem 3.11, thus completing the proof of this theorem.  $\square$

#### 4. Microlocal solutions

In [Hassell et al. 2004, Equation (0.15)] microlocally outgoing solutions were defined using the global function  $\nu$  on  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$ . This is increasing along  $W$  and plays the role of a time function; microlocally incoming and outgoing solution are then determined by requiring the wave front set to lie on one side of a level surface of  $\nu$ . In the present study of microlocal operators, no such global function is available. However there are always microlocal analogues, denoted here by  $\rho$ , defined in appropriate neighbourhoods of a critical point.

**Lemma 4.1.** *There is a neighbourhood  $\mathbb{O}_1$  of  $q$  in  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$  and a function  $\rho \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{O}_1)$  such that  $\mathbb{O}_1$  contains no radial point of  $P$  except  $q$ ,  $\rho(q) = 0$ , and  $W\rho \geq 0$  on  $\Sigma \cap \mathbb{O}$  with  $W\rho > 0$  on  $\Sigma \cap \mathbb{O}_1 \setminus \{q\}$ .*

*Proof.* This follows by considering the linearization of  $W$ . Namely, if  $P$  is conjugated to the form (2–7), then for outgoing radial points  $q$  take  $\rho = |y'|^2 - (|y''|^2 + |y'''|^2 + |\mu|^2)$ , defined in a coordinate neighbourhood  $\mathbb{O}_0$ , for incoming radial points take its negative. On  $\Sigma$ ,  $W\rho \geq c(|y|^2 + |\mu|^2) + h$  for some  $c > 0$  and  $h \in \mathcal{F}^3$ . As  $(y, \mu)$  form a coordinate system on  $\Sigma$  near  $q$ , it follows that  $W\rho \geq (c/2)(|y|^2 + |\mu|^2)$  on a neighbourhood  $\mathbb{O}'$  of  $q$  in  $\Sigma$ . Now let  $\mathbb{O}_1 \subset \mathbb{O}_0$  be such that  $\mathbb{O} \cap \Sigma = \mathbb{O}'$ . Then  $W\rho(p) = 0$ ,  $p \in \mathbb{O}_1$ , implies  $p = q$ , so there are indeed no other radial points in  $\mathbb{O}_1$ , finishing the proof.  $\square$

**Remark 4.2.** Below it is convenient to replace  $\mathbb{O}_1$  by a smaller neighbourhood  $\mathbb{O}$  of  $q$  with  $\bar{\mathbb{O}} \subset \mathbb{O}_1$ , so  $\rho$  is defined and increasing on a neighbourhood of  $\bar{\mathbb{O}}$ .

Consider the structure of the dynamics of  $W$  in  $\mathbb{O}$ . First,  $\rho$  is increasing (that is, “nondecreasing”) along integral curves  $\gamma$  of  $W$ , and it is strictly increasing unless  $\gamma$  reduces to  $q$ . Moreover,  $W$  has no nontrivial periodic orbits and

**Lemma 4.3.** *Let  $\mathbb{O}$  be as in Remark 4.2. If  $\gamma : [0, T) \rightarrow \mathbb{O}$  or  $\gamma : [0, +\infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{O}$  is a maximally forward-extended bicharacteristic, then either  $\gamma$  is defined on  $[0, +\infty)$  and  $\lim_{t \rightarrow +\infty} \gamma(t) = q$ , or  $\gamma$  is defined on  $[0, T)$  and leaves every compact subset  $K$  of  $\mathbb{O}$ , that is, there is  $T_0 < T$  such that for  $t > T_0$ ,  $\gamma(t) \notin K$ .*

*An analogous conclusion holds for maximally backward-extended bicharacteristics.*

*Proof.* If  $\gamma : [0, +\infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{O}$  then  $\lim_{t \rightarrow +\infty} \rho(\gamma(t)) = \rho_+$  exists by the monotonicity of  $\rho$ , and any sequence  $\gamma_k : [0, 1] \rightarrow \Sigma$ ,  $\gamma_k(t) = \gamma(t_k + t)$ ,  $t_k \rightarrow +\infty$ , has a uniformly convergent subsequence, which is then an integral curve  $\tilde{\gamma}$  of  $W$  in  $\Sigma$  with image in  $\bar{\mathbb{O}}$ , hence in  $\mathbb{O}_1$  along which  $\rho$  is constant. The only such bicharacteristic segment is the one with image  $\{q\}$ , so  $\lim_{t \rightarrow +\infty} \gamma(t) = q$ . The claim for  $\gamma$  defined on  $[0, T)$  is standard.  $\square$

As in [Hassell et al. 2004] we make use of open neighbourhoods of the critical points which are well-behaved in terms of  $W$ .

**Definition 4.4.** By a  $W$ -balanced neighbourhood of a nondegenerate radial point  $q$  we shall mean a neighbourhood,  $O$ , of  $q$  in  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$  with  $\bar{O} \subset \mathbb{O}$  (in which  $\rho$  is defined) such that  $O$  contains no other radial point, meets  $\Sigma(\sigma) \cap O$  in a  $W$ -convex set (that is, each integral curve of  $W$  meets  $\Sigma(\sigma)$  in a single interval, possibly empty) and is such that the closure of each integral curve of  $W$  in  $O$  meets  $\rho = \rho(q)$ .

The existence of  $W$ -balanced neighbourhoods follows as in [Hassell et al. 2004, Lemma 1.8].

If  $q$  is a radial point for  $P$  and  $O$  a  $W$ -balanced neighbourhood of  $q$  we set

$$\tilde{E}_{\text{mic},+}(O, P) = \{u \in \mathcal{C}^{-\infty}(X); O \cap \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(Pu) = \emptyset, \text{ and } \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u) \cap O \subset \{\rho \geq \rho(q)\}\}, \quad (4-1)$$

with  $\tilde{E}_{\text{mic},-}(O, P)$  defined by reversing the inequality.

**Lemma 4.5.** *If  $O \ni q$  is a  $W$ -balanced neighbourhood then every  $u \in \tilde{E}_{\text{mic},\pm}(O, P)$  satisfies  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u) \cap O \subset \Phi_{\pm}(\{q\})$ ; furthermore, for  $u \in \tilde{E}_{\text{mic},\pm}(O, P)$*

$$\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u) \cap O = \emptyset \iff q \notin \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u).$$

Thus, we could have defined  $\tilde{E}_{\text{mic},\pm}(O, P)$  by strengthening the restriction on the wavefront set to  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u) \cap O \subset \Phi_{\pm}(\{q\})$ . With such a definition there is no need for  $O$  to be  $W$ -balanced; the only relevant bicharacteristics would be those contained in  $\Phi_{\pm}(\{q\})$ . Moreover, with this definition  $\rho$  does not play any role in the definition, so it is clearly independent of the choice of  $\rho$ .

*Proof.* For the sake of definiteness consider  $u \in \tilde{E}_{\text{mic},+}(O, P)$ ; the other case follows similarly. Suppose  $\zeta \in O \setminus \{q\}$ . If  $\rho(\zeta) < \rho(q)$ , then  $\zeta \notin \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u)$  by the definition of  $\tilde{E}_{\text{mic},+}(O, P)$ , so we may suppose that  $\rho(\zeta) \geq \rho(q)$ . Since  $q \in \Phi_+(\{q\})$  we may also suppose that  $\zeta \neq q$ .

Let  $\gamma : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \Sigma$  be the bicharacteristic through  $\zeta$  with  $\gamma(0) = \zeta$ . As  $O$  is  $W$ -convex, and  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(Pu) \cap O = \emptyset$ , the analogue here of Hörmander’s theorem on the propagation of singularities shows that

$$\zeta \in \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u) \implies \gamma(\mathbb{R}) \cap O \subset \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u).$$

As  $O$  is  $W$ -balanced, there exists  $\zeta' \in \overline{\gamma(\mathbb{R})} \cap O$  such that  $\rho(\zeta') = \rho(q)$ . If  $\rho(\zeta) = \rho(q) = 0$ , we may assume that  $\zeta' = \zeta$ . From this assumption, and the fact that  $\rho$  is increasing along the segment of  $\gamma$  in  $\mathbb{O}$ , and  $O$  is  $W$ -convex, we conclude that  $\zeta' \in \overline{\gamma((-\infty, 0])} \cap O$ .

If  $\zeta' = \gamma(t_0)$  for some  $t_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ , then for  $t < t_0$ ,  $\rho(\gamma(t)) < \rho(\gamma(t_0)) = \rho(q)$ , and for sufficiently small  $|t - t_0|$ ,  $\gamma(t) \in O$  as  $O$  is open. Thus,  $\gamma(t) \notin \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u)$  by the definition of  $\tilde{E}_{\text{mic},+}(O, P)$ , and hence we deduce that  $\zeta \notin \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u)$ .

On the other hand, if  $\zeta' \notin \gamma(\mathbb{R})$ , then as  $O$  is open  $\gamma(t_k) \in O$  for a sequence  $t_k \rightarrow -\infty$ , and as  $O$  is  $W$ -convex,  $\gamma|_{(-\infty, 0]} \subset O$ . Then, again from the propagation of singularities and Lemma 4.3,  $\zeta' = q$ .  $\square$

We may consider  $\tilde{E}_{\text{mic},\pm}(O, P)$  as a space of microfunctions,  $E_{\text{mic},\pm}(q, P)$ , by identifying elements which differ by functions with wavefront set not meeting  $O$ :

$$E_{\text{mic},\pm}(q, P) = \tilde{E}_{\text{mic},\pm}(O, P) / \{u \in \mathcal{C}^{-\infty}(X); \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u) \cap O = \emptyset\}.$$

The result is then independent of the choice of  $O$ , as we show presently.

If  $O_1$  and  $O_2$  are two  $W$ -balanced neighbourhoods of  $q$  then

$$O_1 \subset O_2 \implies \tilde{E}_{\text{mic},\pm}(O_2, P) \subset \tilde{E}_{\text{mic},\pm}(O_1, P). \quad (4-2)$$

Since  $\{u \in \mathcal{C}^{-\infty}(X); \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u) \cap O = \emptyset\} \subset \tilde{E}_{\text{mic},\pm}(O, P)$  for all  $O$  and this linear space decreases with  $O$ , the inclusions (4-2) induce similar maps on the quotients

$$E_{\text{mic},\pm}(O, P) = \tilde{E}_{\text{mic},\pm}(O, P) / \{u \in \mathcal{C}^{-\infty}(X); \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u) \cap O = \emptyset\}, \quad (4-3)$$

$$O_1 \subset O_2 \implies E_{\text{mic},\pm}(O_2, P) \longrightarrow E_{\text{mic},\pm}(O_1, P).$$



**Lemma 4.6.** *Provided  $O_i$ , for  $i = 1, 2$ , are  $W$ -balanced neighbourhoods of  $q$ , the map in (4–3) is an isomorphism.*

*Proof.* We work with  $E_{\text{mic},+}$  for the sake of definiteness.

The map in (4–3) is injective since any element  $u$  of its kernel has a representative  $\tilde{u} \in \tilde{E}_{\text{mic},+}(O_2, \sigma)$  which satisfies  $q \notin \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(\tilde{u})$ , hence  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(\tilde{u}) \cap O_2 = \emptyset$  by Lemma 4.5, so  $u = 0$  in  $E_{\text{mic},+}(O_2, \sigma)$ .

The surjectivity follows from Hörmander’s existence theorem in the real principal type region [1971]. First, note that

$$R = \inf\{\rho(p) : p \in \Phi_+(\{q\}) \cap (\mathbb{C} \setminus O_1)\} > 0 = \rho(q)$$

since in  $\mathbb{C}$ ,  $\rho$  is increasing along integral curves of  $W$ , and strictly increasing away from  $q$ . Let  $U$  be a neighbourhood of  $\Phi_+(\{q\}) \cap \overline{O_1}$  such that  $\overline{U} \subset \mathbb{C}$ , and  $\rho > R_0 = R/2$  on  $U \setminus O_1$ . Let  $A \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(\mathbb{C})$  be such that  $\text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(\text{Id} - A) \cap \overline{O_1} \cap \Phi_+(\{q\}) = \emptyset$  and  $\text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(A) \subset U$ . Thus,  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(Au) \subset U$  and  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(PAu) \subset U \setminus O_1$ , so in particular  $\rho > R_0$  on  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(PAu)$ . We have thus found an element, namely  $\tilde{u} = Au$ , of the equivalence class of  $u$  with wave front set in  $\mathbb{C}$  and such that  $\rho > R_0 > 0 = \rho(q)$  on the wave front set of the “error”,  $P\tilde{u}$ .

The forward bicharacteristic segments from  $U \setminus O_1$  inside  $\mathbb{C}$  leave  $\overline{O_2}$  by the remark after Lemma 4.1; since  $\overline{O_2} \setminus O_1$  is compact, there is an upper bound  $T > 0$  for when this happens. Thus, Hörmander’s existence theorem allows us to solve  $Pv = P\tilde{u}$  on  $O_2$  with  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(v)$  a subset of the forward bicharacteristic segments emanating from  $U \setminus \overline{O_1}$ . Then  $u' = \tilde{u} - v$  satisfies  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u') \subset \mathbb{C} \cap \{\rho \geq 0 = \rho(q)\}$ ,  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(Pu') \cap O_2 = \emptyset$ , so  $u' \in E_{\text{mic},+}(O_2, P)$ , and  $q \notin \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u' - u)$ . Thus  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u' - u) \cap O_1 = \emptyset$ , hence  $u$  and  $u'$  are equivalent in  $\tilde{E}_{\text{mic},+}(O_1, P)$ . This shows surjectivity.  $\square$

It follows from this Lemma that the quotient space  $E_{\text{mic},\pm}(q, P)$  in (4–3) is well-defined, as the notation already indicates, and each element is determined by the behaviour microlocally “at”  $q$ . When  $P$  is the operator  $x^{-1}(\Delta + V - \sigma)$ , then we will denote this space

$$E_{\text{mic},\pm}(q, \sigma). \quad (4-4)$$

**Definition 4.7.** By a *microlocally outgoing solution* to  $Pu = 0$  at a radial point  $q$  we shall mean either an element of  $\tilde{E}_{\text{mic},+}(O, P)$ , where  $O$  is a  $W$ -balanced neighborhood of  $q$ , or of  $E_{\text{mic},+}(q, P)$ .

## 5. Test modules

Following Part I, [Hassell et al. 2004], we use test modules of pseudodifferential operators to analyze the regularity of microlocally incoming solutions near radial points. This involves microlocalizing near the critical point with errors which are well placed relative to the flow. For readers comparing this discussion to Part I, we mention that the microlocalizer  $Q$  in the following definition corresponds to the microlocalizer  $Q$  in Equation (6.27) of Part I; the orders in the commutator are different as now we are working with  $P \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*, -1}(X)$ .

**Definition 5.1.** An element  $Q \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*,0}(X)$  is a *forward microlocalizer* in a neighbourhood  $O \ni q$  of a radial point  $q \in {}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$  for  $P \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*, -1}(X)$  if it is elliptic at  $q$  and there exist  $B, F \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{0,0}(O)$  and  $G \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{0,1}(X)$  such that

$$i[Q^*Q, P] = (B^*B + G) + F \text{ and } \text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(F) \cap \Phi_+(\{q\}) = \emptyset. \quad (5-1)$$

Using the normal form established earlier we can show that such forward microlocalizers exist under our standing assumption that

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{the linearization has neither a Hessian threshold subspace, (iv),} \\ &\text{nor any nondecomposable 4-dimensional invariant subspace.} \end{aligned} \tag{5-2}$$

**Proposition 5.2.** *A forward microlocalizer exists in any neighbourhood of any nondegenerate outgoing radial point  $q \in {}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^* X$  for  $P \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*-1}(X)$  at which the linearization satisfies (5-2).*

*Proof.* Since the conditions (5-1) are microlocal and invariant under conjugation with an elliptic Fourier integral operator, it suffices to consider the model form in Theorem 3.11 which holds under the same conditions (5-2).

Let  $R = |\mu'|^2 + |y''|^2 + |y'''|^2 + |\mu''|^2 + |\mu'''|^2$ , and

$$S = \{p_{\text{norm}} = 0, R = 0\},$$

so  $S$  is the flow-out of  $q$ . We shall choose  $Q \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(X)$  such that

$$\sigma_{\partial}(Q) = q = \chi_1(|y'|^2)\chi_2(R)\psi(p_{\text{norm}}),$$

where  $\chi_1, \chi_2, \psi \in \mathcal{C}_c^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ ,  $\chi_1, \chi_2 \geq 0$  are supported near 0,  $\psi$  is supported near 0,  $\chi_1, \chi_2 \equiv 1$  near 0 and  $\chi_1' \leq 0$  in  $[0, \infty)$ . Choosing all supports sufficiently small ensures that  $Q \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(O)$ . Note that  $\text{supp } d(\chi_2 \circ R) \cap S = \emptyset$ . On the other hand,

$${}^{\text{sc}}H_p \chi_1 \left( \sum_j (y'_j)^2 \right) = 2 \sum_j y'_j ({}^{\text{sc}}H_p y'_j) \chi_1'(|y'|^2) = 2\lambda y'_j (r'_j y'_j + h_j) \chi_1'(|y'|^2),$$

with  $h_j$  vanishing quadratically at  $q$ . Moreover, on  $\text{supp } \chi_1' \circ (|\cdot|^2)$ ,  $y'$  is bounded away from 0. Since  $r'_j < 0$ ,  $-\sum_j r'_j (y'_j)^2 > 0$  on  $\text{supp } \chi_1' \circ (|\cdot|^2)$ . The error terms  $h_j$  can be estimated in terms of  $|y'|^2$ ,  $R$  and  $p_{\text{norm}}^2$ , so, given any  $C > 0$ , there exists  $\delta > 0$  such that the  $-\sum_j y'_j (r'_j y'_j + h_j) > 0$  if  $\text{supp } \chi_1 \subset (-\delta, \delta)$ ,  $R/|y'|^2 < C$  and  $|p_{\text{norm}}|/|y'| < C$ . In particular, taking  $C = 2$ ,  $-\sum_j y'_j (r'_j y'_j + h_j) > 0$  on  $S \cap \text{supp } \chi_1' \circ (|\cdot|^2)$ , for  $R = p_{\text{norm}} = 0$  on  $S$ . Thus (5-1) is satisfied (with  $B$  appropriately specified, microsupported near  $S$ ), provided that  $\chi_1$  is chosen so that  $(-\chi_1 \chi_1')^{1/2}$  is smooth.

More explicitly, letting  $\chi \in \mathcal{C}_c^\infty(\mathbb{R})$  be supported in  $(-1, 1)$  be identically equal to 1 in  $(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$  with  $\chi' \leq 0$  on  $[0, \infty)$ ,  $\chi \geq 0$ ,  $\chi_1 = \chi_2 = \psi = \chi(\cdot/\delta)$ . Indeed, for any choice of  $\delta \in (0, 1)$ ,  $|y'|^2 \geq \delta/2$  on  $\text{supp } \chi_1' \circ |\cdot|^2$ , hence  $R/|y'|^2 < 2$ ,  $|p_{\text{norm}}|/|y'| < 2$  on  $\text{supp } q \cap \text{supp } \chi_1' \circ |\cdot|^2$ . With  $C = 2$ , choosing  $\delta \in (0, 1)$  as above, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{\partial}(i[Q^* Q, P]) &= -{}^{\text{sc}}H_p q^2 = -4\lambda \tilde{b}^2 + \tilde{f}, \\ \tilde{b} &= \left( \sum_j y'_j (r'_j y'_j + h_j) \chi_1'(|y'|^2) \chi_1(|y'|^2) \right)^{1/2} \chi_2(R) \psi(p_{\text{norm}}), \quad \text{supp } \tilde{f} \cap S = \emptyset, \end{aligned}$$

which finishes the proof since  $\lambda < 0$  for an outgoing radial point. □

A test module in an open set  $O \subset {}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^* X$  is, by definition, a linear subspace  $\mathcal{M} \subset \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*-1}(X)$  consisting of operators microsupported in  $O$  which contains and is a module over  $\Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*,0}(X)$ , is closed under commutators, and is algebraically finitely generated. To deduce regularity results we need extra conditions relating the module to the operator  $P$ .

**Definition 5.3.** If  $P \in \Psi_{sc}^{*-1}(X)$  has real principal symbol near a nondegenerate outgoing radial point  $q$  then a test module  $\mathcal{M}$  is said to be  $P$ -positive at  $q$  if it is supported in a  $W$ -balanced neighbourhood of  $q$  and

- (i)  $\mathcal{M}$  is generated by  $A_0 = \text{Id}, A_1, \dots, A_N = P$  over  $\Psi_{sc}^{*,0}(X)$ ,
- (ii) for  $1 \leq i \leq N - 1, 0 \leq j \leq N$  there exists  $C_{ij} \in \Psi_{sc}^{*,0}(X)$ , such that

$$i[A_i, xP] = \sum_{j=0}^N xC_{ij}A_j \tag{5-3}$$

where  $\sigma_{\partial}(C_{ij})(\tilde{q}) = 0$ , for all  $0 \neq j < i$ , and  $\text{Re } \sigma_{\partial}(C_{jj})(\tilde{q}) \geq 0$ .

As shown in [Hassell et al. 2004], microlocal regularity of solutions of a pseudodifferential equation can be deduced by combining such a  $P$ -positive test module with a microlocalizing operator as discussed above. We recall and slightly modify this result.

**Proposition 5.4** (Essentially Proposition 6.7 of [Hassell et al. 2004]; see Proposition A.1 below for a slightly modified statement and a corrected proof). *Suppose that  $P \in \Psi_{sc}^{*-1}(X)$  has real principal symbol,  $q$  is a nondegenerate outgoing radial point for  $P$ ,*

$$\sigma_{\partial,1}(xP - (xP)^*)(q) = 0, \tag{5-4}$$

*$\mathcal{M}$  is a  $P$ -positive test module at  $q$ ,  $Q, Q' \in \Psi_{sc}^{*,0}(X)$  are forward microlocalizers for  $P$  at  $q$  with  $\text{WF}'_{sc}(Q')$  being a subset of the elliptic set of  $Q$ . Finally suppose that for some  $s < -\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $u \in H_{sc}^{\infty,s}(X)$  satisfies*

$$\text{WF}_{sc}(u) \cap \mathcal{O} \subset \Phi_+(\{q\}) \text{ and } Pu \in \dot{C}^{\infty}(X). \tag{5-5}$$

*Then  $u \in I_{sc}^{(s)}(O', \mathcal{M})$  where  $O'$  is the elliptic set of  $Q'$ .*

*Proof.* As already noted this is essentially Proposition 6.7 of [Hassell et al. 2004], with a small change to the statement and the proof given in Proposition A.1 below. However, there are some small differences to be noted. In Part I (and here in the Appendix), the condition in (5-3) was  $j > i$ ; here we changed to  $j < i$  for a more convenient ordering. Since the labelling is arbitrary, this does not affect the proof of the Proposition.

Also, in Part I the proposition was stated for the 0-th order operators such as  $\Delta + V - \sigma$ , which are formally self-adjoint with respect to a scattering metric. This explains the appearance of  $xP$  both in (5-4) and in (5-3) here, even though in the applications below,  $[A_i, x]$  could be absorbed in the  $C_{i0}$  term. In particular,  $s < -1/2$  in (5-5) arises from a pairing argument that uses the formal self-adjointness of  $xP$ , modulo terms that can be estimated by  $[x^s A^\alpha, xP]$ ,  $s > 0$ ,  $A^\alpha$  a product of the  $A_j$ .

The proposition in Part I is proved with (5-4) replaced by  $(xP) = (xP)^*$ , but (5-4) is sufficient for all arguments to go through, since  $B = (xP) - (xP)^*$  would contribute error terms of the form  $x^s A^\alpha B$  with  $\sigma_{\partial,1}(B)(q) = 0$ , which can thus be handled exactly the same way as the  $C_{jj}$  term in (5-3).

In fact (5-4) can always be arranged for any  $P_0 \in \Psi_{sc}^{*-1}(X)$  with a nondegenerate radial point and real principal symbol. Indeed, we only need to conjugate by  $x^k$  giving

$$P = x^k P_0 x^{-k}, \quad k = \frac{-\sigma_{\partial,1}(B)(q)}{2i\lambda} \in \mathbb{R}$$

satisfies (5–4); here  $dp|_q = \lambda\alpha|_q$ , with  $\alpha$  the contact form. Microlocal solutions  $P_0u_0 = 0$ , correspond to microlocal solutions  $Pu = 0$  via  $u = x^k u_0$ , so  $u \in H_{sc}^{\infty,s}(X)$  is replaced by  $u_0 \in H_{sc}^{\infty,s-k}(X)$ .  $\square$

Thus, iterative regularity with respect to the module essentially reduces to showing that the positive commutator estimates (5–3) hold. For each critical point  $q$  satisfying (5–2) a suitable (essentially maximal) module is constructed below, so microlocally outgoing solutions to  $Pu = 0$  have iterative regularity under the module; that is, that

$$u \in I_{sc}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M}) = \{u; \mathcal{M}^m u \subset H_{sc}^{\infty,s}(X) \text{ for all } m\}. \tag{5-6}$$

The test modules are elliptic off the forward flow out  $\Phi_+(q)$  which is an isotropic submanifold of  $S$ . Thus, it is natural to expect that  $u$  is some sort of an isotropic distribution. In fact the flow out (in the model setting just the submanifold  $S$ ) has nonstandard homogeneity structure, so these distributions are more reasonably called “anisotropic”.

First we construct a test module for the model operator when there are no resonant terms. Thus, we can assume that the principal symbol is

$$p_0 = \lambda \left( -\nu + \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} r_j y_j \mu_j + \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} Q_j(y_j, \mu_j) \right).$$

Then let  $\mathcal{M}$  be the test module generated by Id and operators with principal symbols

$$x^{-1} f'_j, \quad x^{-r''_j} e''_j, \quad x^{-(1-r''_j)} f''_j, \quad x^{-1/2} e'''_j, \quad x^{-1/2} f'''_j \quad \text{and} \quad x^{-1} p_0 \tag{5-7}$$

over  $\Psi_{sc}^{*,0}(X)$ .

Note that the order of the generators is given by the negative of the normalized eigenvalue (that is, the eigenvalue in Lemma 2.7 divided by  $\lambda$ ) subject to the conditions that if the order would be  $< -1$ , it is adjusted to  $-1$ , and if it would be  $> 0$ , it is omitted. The latter restrictions conform to our definition of a test module, in which all terms of order 0 are included and there are no terms of order less than  $-1$ . These orders can be seen to be optimal (that is, most negative) by a principal symbol calculation) of the commutator with  $A$  in which the corresponding eigenvalue arises.

**Lemma 5.5.** *Suppose  $P$  is nonresonant at  $q$ . Then the module  $\mathcal{M}$  generated by (5–7) is closed under commutators and satisfies condition (5–3).*

*Proof.* It suffices to check the commutators of generators to show that  $\mathcal{M}$  is closed. In view of (2–3) (applied with  $a$  in place of  $p$ ),  $\{a, b\} = {}^{sc}H_a b$ , this can be easily done. Property (5–3) follows readily from (3–1). Indeed, we have the stronger property

$$i[A_i, P(\sigma)] = c_i A_i + G_i, \quad G_i \in \Psi^{*,0}(X), \quad \text{Re } c_i \geq 0$$

where  $A_i$  is any of the generators of  $\mathcal{M}$  listed in (5–7).  $\square$

**Remark 5.6.** We may take generators of  $\mathcal{M}$  to be the operators

$$\begin{aligned} & D_{y'_j}, \quad x^{-r''_j} y''_j, \quad x^{r''_j} D_{y''_j}, \quad x^{-1/2} y'''_j, \quad x^{1/2} D_{y'''_j} \quad \text{and} \\ & x D_x + \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} r_j y_j D_{y_j} + \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} Q_j(x^{-1/2} y_j, x^{1/2} D_{y_j}). \end{aligned} \tag{5-8}$$

Combining this with Proposition 5.4 proves that, in the nonresonant case, if  $u$  is a microlocal solution at  $q$ , and if  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}^s(u)$  is a subset of the  $W$ -flowout of  $q$ , then  $u \in I_{\text{sc}}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for all  $s < -1/2$ .

The discrepancy between the “resonance order” of polynomials in  $v^a e^\beta f^\gamma$ , given by  $a + \sum_j \beta_j r_j + \sum_k \gamma_k (1 - r_k)$  and the “module order” given by the sum of the orders of the corresponding module elements is closely related to arguments which allow us to regard most resonant terms as “effectively nonresonant”. To give an explicit example, take a resonant term of the form  $y'_i \mu'_j (y'')^{\beta''}$ , corresponding to a term like  $x^{-1} y'_i (y'')^{\beta''} (x D_{y'_j})$  in  $P$ . Resonance requires that  $r'_i + (1 - r'_j) + \sum_k \beta''_k r''_k = 1$  and  $|\beta''| > 0$ . In the module, this corresponds to a product of module elements with an additional factor of  $x^\epsilon$  with  $\epsilon > 0$ , since we can write it

$$x^\epsilon y'_i \prod_k (x^{-r''_k} y''_k)^{\beta''_k} D_{y'_j}, \quad \epsilon = \sum_k \beta''_k r''_k > 0.$$

Since, by Proposition 5.4, the eigenfunction  $u$  remains in  $x^s L^2(X)$ , for all  $s < -1/2$ , under application of products of elements of  $\mathcal{M}$ , this term applied to  $u$  yields a factor  $x^\epsilon$ , and therefore it can be treated as an error term in determining the asymptotic expansion of  $u$ ; see the proof of Theorem 6.7. Only the terms with the module order equal to the resonance order affect the expansion of  $u$  to leading order, and it is these we have labelled “effectively resonant”.

Next we consider the general resonant case. To do so, we need to enlarge the module  $\mathcal{M}$  so that certain products of the generators of  $\mathcal{M}$ , such as those in the resonant terms of Theorem 3.11, are also included in the larger module  $\tilde{\mathcal{M}}$ . For a simple example, see [Hassell et al. 2004, Section 8]. It is convenient to replace  $P_0$  by  $x D_x$  as the last generator of  $\mathcal{M}$  listed in (5–8), though this is not necessary; all arguments below can be easily modified if this is not done. Let us denote the generators of  $\mathcal{M}$  by

$$A_0 = \text{Id}, A_1 = x^{-s_1} B_1, \dots, A_{N-1} = x^{-s_{N-1}} B_{N-1}, A_N = x D_x = x^{-1} B_N, \\ s_i = -\text{order}(A_i), B_i \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty, 0}(O).$$

Note that for each  $i = 1, \dots, N$ ,  $d\sigma_{\partial, 0}(B_i)$  is an eigenvector of the linearization of  $W$ ; we denote the eigenvalue by  $\sigma_i$ . Thus,

$$s_i = \min(1, \sigma_i) > 0 \text{ for } i = 1, \dots, N.$$

For any multiindex  $\alpha \in \mathbb{N}^N$  (with  $\mathbb{N} = \{1, 2, \dots\}$ ) let

$$s(\alpha) = \min\left(\sum_i s_i \alpha_i, 1\right), \tilde{s}(\alpha) = \sum_i s_i \alpha_i - s(\alpha) = \max\left(0, \sum_i s_i \alpha_i - 1\right),$$

and let

$$A^\alpha = A_1^{\alpha_1} A_2^{\alpha_2} \dots A_N^{\alpha_N}.$$

Let  $e_i$  be the multiindex  $e_i = (0, \dots, 0, 1, 0, \dots, 0)$ , where the 1 is in the  $i$ -th slot, if  $i = 1, \dots, N$ , and let  $e_0 = (0, \dots, 0)$ .

To deal with resonant terms, we define a module  $\mathcal{M}_k$  generated (over  $\Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty, 0}(O)$ ) by the operators

$$x^{\tilde{s}(\alpha)} A^\alpha \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty, -s(\alpha)}(O), \quad |\alpha| \leq k. \tag{5-9}$$

Note that  $\alpha = 0$  gives Id as one of the generators. Thus, the order of the generators in (5–9) is “truncated” so that it is always between 0 and  $-1$ ; in particular  $\mathcal{M}_k \subset \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty, -1}(O)$ . Since in computations below we

will think of  $\Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(O)$  as the submodule of  $\mathcal{M}_k$  consisting of trivial elements, it is convenient to work modulo such terms, so we use what is essentially the principal symbol equivalence relation on  $\mathcal{M}_k$  where  $P \sim Q$  if  $P - Q \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(O)$ .

While it appears that the ordering in the factors in the product  $A^\alpha$  matters, this is not the case. Indeed, if  $\sigma$  is a permutation of  $\{1, \dots, |\alpha|\}$ , and  $j : \{1, \dots, |\alpha|\} \mapsto \{1, \dots, N\}$  which takes  $\alpha_m$ -times the value  $m$ ,  $m = 1, \dots, N$ , then

$$x^{\tilde{s}(\alpha)} A_{j(1)} \dots A_{j(|\alpha|)} \sim x^{\tilde{s}(\alpha)} A_{j(\sigma(1))} \dots A_{j(\sigma(|\alpha|))},$$

for this is clear if  $\sigma$  interchanges  $n$  and  $n + 1$ , as

$$\begin{aligned} x^{\tilde{s}(\alpha)} A_{j(1)} \dots A_{j(n-1)} [A_{j(n)}, A_{j(n+1)}] A_{j(n+2)} \dots A_{j(|\alpha|)} \\ \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty, \tilde{s}(\alpha)+1-\sum s_i \alpha_i}(O) \subset \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(O) \end{aligned}$$

since  $\tilde{s}(\alpha) + 1 - \sum_i s_i \alpha_i = 1 - s(\alpha) \geq 0$ .

In addition, for  $Q \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(O)$ ,

$$x^{\tilde{s}(\alpha)} Q A_{j(1)} \dots A_{j(|\alpha|)} \sim x^{\tilde{s}(\alpha)} A_{j(1)} \dots A_{j(m)} Q A_{j(m+1)} \dots A_{j(|\alpha|)}.$$

Similarly, one can shift powers of  $x$  from in front of the product to in between factors, so in fact the generators can be written equivalently, modulo  $\Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(O)$ , as

$$x^{s(\alpha)} B^\alpha \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty, -s(\alpha)}(O), \quad |\alpha| \leq k, \tag{5-10}$$

where  $B^\alpha = B_1^{\alpha_1} \dots B_N^{\alpha_N}$ .

Moreover, there is an integer  $J$  such that  $\mathcal{M}_k = \mathcal{M}_J$  if  $k \geq J$ ; indeed this is true for any  $J \geq 2(r'_s)^{-1}$ , where  $r'_s$  is the smallest positive eigenvalue of the operator in Lemma 2.5 (or  $J \geq 4$  if no eigenvalue lies in  $(0, \frac{1}{2}]$ ), since then adding new elements to the product simply has the effect of multiplying by an element of  $\Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*,0}(X)$ .

In particular, note that the generators in (5-9) or (5-10) are usually not linearly independent: some  $B_{\alpha_j}$  may be absorbable into a  $\Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*,0}(O)$  factor without affecting  $s(\alpha)$ . We could easily give a linearly independent (over  $\Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*,0}(O)$ ) subset of the generators, but this is of no importance here.

Suppose that  $\tilde{P}$ , the normal operator for  $P(\sigma)$  at  $q$ , contains resonant terms. Then Lemma 5.5 is replaced by:

**Lemma 5.7.** *Let  $>$  be a total order on multiindices  $\alpha$  satisfying*

- (i)  $|\alpha'| > |\alpha|$  implies  $\alpha' > \alpha$ ;
- (ii)  $|\alpha'| = |\alpha|$  and  $\sum_k s_k \alpha'_k > \sum_k s_k \alpha_k$  imply  $\alpha' > \alpha$ ;
- (iii)  $|\alpha'| = |\alpha| = 1$ ,  $\alpha' = e_i$ ,  $\alpha = e_j$ ,  $s_i = s_j = 1$ ,  $\sigma_i > \sigma_j$  imply that  $\alpha' > \alpha$ .

With the corresponding ordering of the generators  $x^{-\tilde{s}(\alpha)} A^\alpha$ , the module  $\mathcal{M}_J$  is a test module for  $\tilde{P}$  at  $q$  satisfying (5-3).

**Remark 5.8.** (ii) and (iii) could be replaced by (ii)':  $|\alpha'| = |\alpha|$  and  $\sum_k \sigma_k \alpha'_k > \sum_k \sigma_k \alpha_k$  imply  $\alpha' > \alpha$ , which would simplify the statement of the lemma. However, the proof is slightly simpler with the present statement. Note that (ii)+(iii) is not equivalent to (ii)', that is, the ordering of the generators may be different, but either ordering gives (5-3).

*Proof.* We first observe that  $\mathcal{M}_J$  is closed under commutators. Indeed, not only is  $\mathcal{M}$  closed under commutators, but the commutators  $[A_i, A_j]$  can be written as  $\sum_{l=0}^N C_l A_l$  with  $C_l \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(X)$  and  $C_l = 0$  unless  $s_l \leq s_i + s_j - 1$ . Expanding

$$[x^{\tilde{s}(\alpha)} Q_\alpha A^\alpha, x^{\tilde{s}(\beta)} Q_\beta A^\beta], \quad Q_\alpha, Q_\beta \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(O),$$

and ignoring momentarily the commutators with powers of  $x$  and with  $Q_\alpha$  and  $Q_\beta$ , gives a sum of terms of the form

$$x^{\tilde{s}(\alpha)+\tilde{s}(\beta)} Q_\alpha Q_\beta A^{\alpha'} A^{\beta'} [A_i, A_j] A^{\alpha''} A^{\beta''}$$

with  $\alpha = \alpha' + \alpha'' + e_i$ , and similarly for  $\beta$ . Substituting in  $[A_i, A_j] = \sum_{l=0}^N C_l A_l$  shows that this is an element of the module and is indeed equivalent, modulo  $\Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(O)$ , to

$$\sum_{l:s_l \leq s_i+s_j-1} (C_l x^{\tilde{s}(\alpha)+\tilde{s}(\beta)-\tilde{s}(\gamma^{(l)})}) x^{\tilde{s}(\gamma^{(l)})} A^{\gamma^{(l)}}, \quad (5-11)$$

$$\gamma^{(l)} = \alpha' + \alpha'' + \beta' + \beta'' + e_l = \alpha + \beta - e_i - e_j + e_l,$$

provided that

$$\tilde{s}(\gamma^{(l)}) \leq \tilde{s}(\alpha) + \tilde{s}(\beta). \quad (5-12)$$

But  $\tilde{s}(\alpha) + \tilde{s}(\beta) \geq (\sum s_i \alpha_i - 1) + (\sum s_i \beta_i - 1) = \sum s_i \gamma_i^{(l)} + s_i + s_j - s_l - 2 \geq \sum s_i \gamma_i^{(l)} - 1$  as  $s_i + s_j - s_l \geq 1$ . Moreover,  $\tilde{s}(\alpha) + \tilde{s}(\beta) \geq 0$ , so

$$\tilde{s}(\alpha) + \tilde{s}(\beta) \geq \max\left(\sum s_k \gamma_k^{(l)} - 1, 0\right) = \tilde{s}(\gamma^{(l)}),$$

proving (5-12).

The commutators

$$x^{\tilde{s}(\beta)} Q_\beta [x^{\tilde{s}(\alpha)} Q_\alpha, A^\beta] A^\alpha, \quad x^{\tilde{s}(\alpha)} Q_\alpha [A^\alpha, x^{\tilde{s}(\beta)} Q_\beta] A^\beta \quad (5-13)$$

also lie in  $\mathcal{M}_J$ . Indeed,  $[A_i, x^\rho Q] = x^{\rho-s_i+1} Q'$  for some  $Q' \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(O)$ , so they are sums of terms of the form  $x^{\tilde{s}(\alpha)+\tilde{s}(\beta)-s_i+1} Q' A^\gamma$  with  $\gamma = \alpha + \beta - e_i$ . Now,

$$\tilde{s}(\gamma) \leq \tilde{s}(\alpha) + \tilde{s}(\beta) - s_i + 1$$

since  $\tilde{s}(\alpha) + \tilde{s}(\beta) - s_i + 1 \geq 0$  as  $1 \geq s_i$  as well as  $\tilde{s}(\alpha) + \tilde{s}(\beta) - s_i + 1 \geq (\sum_k s_k \alpha_k - 1) + (\sum_k s_k \beta_k - 1) - s_i + 1 = \sum_k s_k \gamma_k - 1$ , so  $\tilde{s}(\alpha) + \tilde{s}(\beta) - s_i + 1 \geq \max(\sum_k s_k \gamma_k - 1, 0) = \tilde{s}(\gamma)$  indeed, proving that (5-13) is in  $\mathcal{M}_J$ . The commutators

$$[x^{\tilde{s}(\alpha)} Q_\alpha, x^{\tilde{s}(\beta)} Q_\beta] A^\alpha A^\beta \quad (5-14)$$

can be shown to lie in  $\mathcal{M}_J$  by a similar argument, this time using  $\gamma = \alpha + \beta$ , and  $\tilde{s}(\gamma) \leq \tilde{s}(\alpha) + \tilde{s}(\beta) + 1$ . Thus, we conclude that  $[x^{\tilde{s}(\alpha)} Q_\alpha A^\alpha, x^{\tilde{s}(\beta)} Q_\beta A^\beta] \in \mathcal{M}_J$ , and hence  $\mathcal{M}_J = \mathcal{M}_{J+1} = \dots$  is closed under commutators.

Modulo  $\Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(O)$ ,  $x^{\tilde{s}(\gamma^{(l)})} A^{\gamma^{(l)}}$  may be replaced by  $x^{-s(\gamma^{(l)})} B^{\gamma^{(l)}}$ . If  $|\gamma^{(l)}| > J$  in (5-11), then this is written in terms of one of the generators listed in (5-10) (or equivalently, modulo  $\Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(O)$ , in (5-9)), only after some of the factors in  $B^{\gamma^{(l)}}$ , which we may always take from  $B_l B^{\beta'} B^{\beta''}$ , are moved to the front and are incorporated in  $C_l$ , that is, they are simply regarded as 0-th order operators and  $C_l$  is replaced

by  $\tilde{C}_l = C_l B_l B^{\beta'} B^{\beta''}$ . Notice the principal symbol of  $\tilde{C}_l$  always vanishes at  $q$  in this case. Analogous conclusions hold for the terms in (5–13) and (5–14).

On the other hand, if  $|\gamma^{(l)}| \leq J$ , then  $x^{s(\gamma^{(l)})} A^{\gamma^{(l)}}$  is one of the generators in (5–9), and  $|\gamma^{(l)}| = |\alpha| + |\beta| - 1$  if  $l \geq 1$ , and  $|\gamma^{(l)}| = |\alpha| + |\beta| - 2$  if  $l = 0$ . Moreover, if  $\sum_k s_k \beta_k > 1$  then

$$\sum_k s_k \gamma_k^{(l)} = \sum_k s_k \alpha_k + \sum_k s_k \beta_k - s_i - s_j + s_l \geq \sum_k s_k \alpha_k + \sum_k s_k \beta_k - 1 > \sum_k s_k \alpha_k. \tag{5–15}$$

For the terms in (5–13) and (5–14), if  $|\gamma| \leq J$ , we always get  $|\gamma| \geq |\alpha| + |\beta| - 1$  since  $\gamma = \alpha + \beta$  or  $\gamma = \alpha + \beta - e_i$  for some  $i$ .

Now we turn to (5–3). First, with  $\tilde{P}$  replaced by  $P_0$ , (5–3) is certainly satisfied, exactly as in the nonresonant case, since the  $\sigma_{\partial,0}(B^\alpha)$  are eigenvectors of the linearization of  $W$  with eigenvalue given in Section 3. Thus,

$$i[A^\alpha, x^{-1} P_0] \sum_\gamma C'_\gamma A^\gamma, \quad C'_\gamma \in \Psi_{sc}^{-\infty,0}(O), \tag{5–16}$$

with  $\sigma_{\partial,0}(C'_\gamma(q)) = 0$  if  $\alpha \neq \gamma$  and  $\text{Re } \sigma_{\partial,0}(C'_\alpha(q)) \geq 0$ . So it remains to show that it also holds for the resonant terms. If  $x^{-s(\beta)} Q_\beta B^\beta$  is a resonant term, then  $s(\beta) = 1$ . Moreover,

- (i) if  $|\beta| = 1$ , then  $x^{-1} Q_\beta B^\beta = \sum_{\mu'} (y')^{\mu'} D_{y'_k}$  for some  $\mu'$  and some  $k$ ; in particular it is a summand of  $r_{er}$ ;
- (ii) if  $|\beta| = 2$ , then either  $x^{-1} Q_\beta B^\beta = B_j D_{y'_k}$  for some  $j > 0, k$ , or  $x^{-1} Q_\beta B^\beta$  is associated to the sum over  $J''$  in (3–15); in either case  $\sum_k s_k \beta_k > 1$ .

We claim that for a resonant term  $x^{-s(\beta)} Q_\beta B^\beta$ ,

$$[x^{-s(\alpha)} B^\alpha, x^{-s(\beta)} Q_\beta B^\beta] \sim \sum_\gamma \tilde{C}_\gamma x^{-s(\gamma)} B^\gamma, \quad \tilde{C}_\gamma \in \Psi_{sc}^{-\infty,0}(X), \tag{5–17}$$

and each term on the right hand side has the following property:

- (i) Either  $\sigma_{\partial,0}(\tilde{C}_\gamma)(q) = 0$ , or
- (ii)  $|\gamma| > |\alpha|$ , or
- (iii)  $|\gamma| = |\alpha|$ ,  $\sum_k s_k \gamma_k > \sum_k s_k \alpha_k$ , or
- (iv)  $|\gamma| = |\alpha| = 1$ ,  $\gamma = e_k, \alpha = e_j, s_j = s_k = 1$  and  $\sigma_k > \sigma_j$ .

Indeed, if  $|\beta| \geq 3$ , then either (i) or (ii) holds, depending on whether any factors  $A_k$  had to be cancelled to write the commutator in terms of the generators in (5–9). If  $|\beta| = 2$ , then  $\sum_k s_k \beta_k > 1$ . Thus, again, either (i) or (ii) holds, or  $|\gamma| = |\alpha|$  and  $\sum_k s_k \gamma_k > \sum_k s_k \alpha_k$  by (5–15), so (iii) holds. Finally, if  $|\beta| = 1$ , then  $x^{-1} Q_\beta B^\beta = \sum_{\mu'} (y')^{\mu'} D_{y'_k}$  for some  $\mu'$  and some  $k$ . Since  $r_1 \leq r_2 \leq \dots \leq r_{s-1} < 0$ , and the resonance condition is  $\sum_{l=1}^{s-1} \mu'_l r_l + (1 - r_k) = 1$  with  $|\mu'_l| + 1 \geq 3$ , we immediately deduce that  $\mu'_l = 0$  for  $l \leq k$ . Thus, not only do powers of  $x$  commute with  $x^{-1} Q_\beta B^\beta$ , but all  $A_i$  commute with  $D_{y'_k}$  and  $[A_i, (y')^{\mu'}] = 0$  unless  $A_i = D_{y'_j}$  and  $\mu'_j \neq 0$  for some  $j$ , which in turn implies that  $j > k$ , so  $1 - r_k > 1 - r_j$ , hence (iv) holds. This completes the proof of (5–17).



By the assumption on the ordering of the multiindices  $\alpha$ , we deduce that for all resonant terms  $x^{-s(\beta)} B^\beta$ ,

$$i[A^\alpha, x^{-s(\beta)} B^\beta] = \sum_\gamma C_\gamma A^\gamma, \quad C_\gamma \in \Psi_{sc}^{-\infty, 0}(O),$$

and either  $\sigma_{\partial, 0}(C_\gamma)(q) = 0$ , or  $\gamma > \alpha$ . Combining this with (5–16), we deduce that  $\mathcal{M}_J$  satisfies (5–3). This establishes the lemma.  $\square$

**Corollary 5.9.** *Let  $\mathcal{M} = \mathcal{M}_J$  be as in the previous lemma. Suppose that*

$$s < -\frac{1}{2}, \quad u \in H_{sc}^{\infty, s}(X), \quad \tilde{P}u \in \dot{C}^\infty(X), \quad \text{WF}_{sc}(u) \cap O \subset \Phi_+(\{q\}).$$

Then  $u \in I_{sc}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$ .

Regularity with respect to  $\mathcal{M}$  can be understood more geometrically as follows. Suppose  $\delta > 0$  is sufficiently small so that  $(x, y', y'', y''')$  define local coordinates on the region  $U$  given by  $0 \leq x < \delta$ ,  $|y_j| < \delta$  for all  $j$ . Let

$$\Phi : U^\circ \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+^n, \quad \Phi(x, y', y'', y''') = (x, y', Y'', Y'''), \quad Y_j'' = \frac{y_j''}{x^{r_j''}}, \quad Y_j''' = \frac{y_j'''}{x^{1/2}}. \quad (5-18)$$

Thus,  $\Phi$  is a diffeomorphism onto its range  $\Phi(U^\circ)$  with

$$\Phi^{-1}(x, y', Y'', Y''') = (x, y', x^{r_j''} Y_j'', x^{1/2} Y_j''').$$

Note that  $\overline{\Phi(U^\circ)}$  is not compact;  $Y''$  and  $Y'''$  are “global” variables. Thus  $\Phi^{-1}$  is actually continuous on  $\overline{\Phi(U^\circ)}$  since  $r_j'' > 0$ . Thus,  $\Phi$  is a blow-up and  $\Phi^{-1}$  is a somewhat singular blow-down map. In the coordinates  $(x, y', Y'', Y''')$  the Riemannian density takes the form

$$ax^{-n-1} dx dy = ax^{-n+\sum r_j''+(n-m)/2-1} dx dy' dY'' dY''',$$

$a > 0$ ,  $a \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(X)$ . We thus conclude that (for  $O$  small)  $u \in I_{sc}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  if and only if for any  $Q \in \Psi_{sc}^{-\infty, 0}(O)$  with Schwartz kernel supported in  $U \times U$ , its microlocalization  $Qu$  satisfies

$$(Y'')^{\gamma''} (Y''')^{\gamma'''} (x D_x)^a D_{y'}^{\beta'} D_{Y''}^{\beta''} D_{Y'''}^{\beta'''} Qu \in x^{s+n/2-\sum r_j''/2-(n-m)/4} L^2(x^{-1} dx dy' dY'' dY'''), \quad (5-19)$$

for every  $a, \beta, \gamma''$  and  $\gamma'''$ , that is, if and only if microlocally  $u$  is conormal in  $(x, y')$  with values in Schwartz functions in  $(Y'', Y''')$ , with the weight given by  $s + n/2 - \sum r_j''/2 - (n - m)/4$ .

We also recall that for conormal functions, the  $L^2$  and the  $L^\infty$  spaces are very close, namely they are included in each other with a loss of  $x^\epsilon$ . Thus,  $u \in I_{sc}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  implies that

$$(Y'')^{\gamma''} (Y''')^{\gamma'''} (x D_x)^a D_{y'}^{\beta'} D_{Y''}^{\beta''} D_{Y'''}^{\beta'''} Qu \in x^{s+n/2-\sum r_j''/2-(n-m)/4-\epsilon} L^\infty(x^{-1} dx dy' dY'' dY'''),$$

for every  $\epsilon > 0$ .

### 6. Effectively nonresonant operators

We now assume that the normal form  $p_{\text{norm}}$  for  $\sigma_1(P(\sigma))$  at  $q$  is such that the term  $r_{\text{er}}$  in Theorem 3.11 vanishes. If this is true, we shall call  $p_{\text{norm}}$  *effectively nonresonant*, and  $\sigma$  an *effectively nonresonant energy* for  $q$ . The significance of the notion of effective resonance in general is that the form of the

asymptotics of microlocally outgoing solutions of  $Pu = f$ ,  $f \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$ , is independent of  $r_{\text{enr}}$ ; only  $r_{\text{er}}$  changes this form slightly. Moreover, effective nonresonance is a more typical condition than nonresonance. We deal with the effectively nonresonant case in this section and treat the effectively resonant case in the following section. In both cases, it is convenient to reduce  $P$ , and not only its principal symbol, to model form. This is accomplished in the following lemma. We recall here our ongoing assumption (5–2).

**Lemma 6.1.** *Let  $p_{\text{norm}}$  be as in Theorem 3.11 and  $\tilde{P}$  as in Remark 3.12, that is,  $\sigma_{\partial, -1}(\tilde{P}) = p_{\text{norm}}$ . Then  $\tilde{P}$  can be conjugated by a smooth function to the form*

$$\begin{aligned}
 P_{\text{norm}} = & \lambda \left( x D_x + \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} r_j y_j D_{y_j} + \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} Q_j(x^{-1/2} y_j, x^{1/2} D_{y_j}) + R_{\text{er}} + b + R \right) \\
 R_{\text{er}} = & \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} \mathcal{P}_j(y') D_{y_j} + \sum_{j=s}^{m-1} \mathcal{P}_j(y'') D_{y_j} + \mathcal{P}_0(y''),
 \end{aligned} \tag{6-1}$$

where  $b$  is a constant,  $Q_j$  is a real elliptic homogeneous quadratic polynomial (that is, a harmonic oscillator),  $\mathcal{P}_j$  and  $\mathcal{P}_0$  are homogeneous polynomials of degree  $r_j$ , respectively 1, when  $y_k$  is assigned degree  $r_k$ , and  $R \in x^\epsilon(\mathcal{M})^j$  for some  $j \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $\epsilon > 0$ . In addition, for  $s \leq j \leq m - 1$ ,  $\mathcal{P}_j$  is actually a polynomial in  $y_s, \dots, y_{j-1}$  (that is, is independent of  $y_j, \dots, y_{m-1}$ ) without constant or linear terms, while for  $j \leq s - 1$ ,  $\mathcal{P}_j$  is a polynomial in  $y_{j+1}, \dots, y_{s-1}$ .

We call  $P_{\text{norm}}$  a normal form for  $P$ . If  $p_{\text{norm}}$  is effectively nonresonant then  $R_{\text{er}} = 0$ .

**Remark 6.2.** Note that  $Q_j(x^{-1/2} y_j, x^{1/2} D_{y_j})$  is not completely well-defined since  $Q_j$  is a homogeneous quadratic polynomial, and  $y_j$  and  $D_{y_j}$  do not commute. However, any two choices for the quantization  $Q_j$  differ by a constant multiple of the commutator  $[x^{-1/2} y_j, x^{1/2} D_{y_j}] = [y_j, D_{y_j}]$ , hence by a constant.

In particular, with the notation of the previous section,  $Q_j(Y_j, D_{Y_j})$  may be arranged to be self-adjoint with respect to  $dY_j$ , by symmetrizing if necessary, which changes  $Q_j$  at most by a constant.

*Proof.* With the notation of Lemma 5.7, any effectively resonant monomial (defined in Definition 3.9) gives rise to a term of the form  $x^{-1} Q_\beta B^\beta$  with  $\sum_k s_k \beta_k = 1$ , while the effectively nonresonant terms (defined in Definition 3.10) are of the form  $x^{-1} Q_\beta B^\beta$  with  $\sum_k s_k \beta_k > 1$ . This is indeed the key point in categorizing resonant terms as effectively resonant or nonresonant; see the proof of Theorem 6.7. But if  $\epsilon = \sum s_k \beta_k - 1 > 0$ , we can rewrite  $x^{-1} Q_\beta B^\beta \sim x^\epsilon Q_\beta A^\beta$  (that is, the difference of the two sides is in  $\Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty, 0}(X)$ ), and  $Q_\beta A^\beta \in \mathcal{M}^{|\beta|}$ . Since there are only finitely many effectively nonresonant terms in (3–15), we deduce that any  $\tilde{P}$  with  $\sigma_1(\tilde{P}) = p_{\text{norm}}$  may be written

$$\lambda^{-1} \tilde{P} = x D_x + \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} r_j y_j D_{y_j} + \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} Q_j(x^{-1/2} y_j, x^{1/2} D_{y_j}) + R_{\text{er}} + B + \tilde{R},$$

where  $R_{\text{er}}$  is as in (6–1),  $\tilde{R} \in x^\epsilon \mathcal{M}_J$  for some  $\epsilon > 0$ , and  $B \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{*, 0}(X)$ . Note that  $\mathcal{P}_j$  and  $\mathcal{P}_0$  are polynomials, and the homogeneity claim is the meaning of the resonance condition Proposition 3.6. For  $s \leq j \leq m - 1$ ,  $\mathcal{P}_j$  is independent of  $y_j, \dots, y_{m-1}$  since  $0 < r_s \leq r_{s+1} \leq \dots \leq r_{m-1}$ ;  $y_j$  itself cannot appear in  $\mathcal{P}_j$  due to the restriction  $2a + |\beta| + |\gamma| \geq 3$  in Proposition 3.6. Similarly, for  $j \leq s - 1$ ,  $\mathcal{P}_j$  is

independent of  $y_1, \dots, y_j$  as  $r_1 \leq r_2 \leq \dots \leq r_{s-1} < 0$ . This also shows that the polynomials  $\mathcal{P}_j$ ,  $j \neq 0$ , have no constant or linear terms.

Let  $B$  have symbol  $b(v, y, \mu)$ . This can be reduced to the symbol  $b'(0, (y', 0, 0), 0)$ , modulo terms in  $x^\epsilon \mathcal{M}^j$ . Finally, by conjugating  $P_{\text{norm}}$  by a function  $e^{if(y')}$ , we can remove the  $y'$ -dependence of  $b'$ . Indeed, the Taylor series of  $f$  can be constructed iteratively. Let  $\mathcal{F}'$  denote the ideal of functions of  $y'$  that vanish at 0. Conjugating  $\tilde{P}$  by  $e^{if}$  produces the terms  $\sum_{j=1}^{s-1} r'_j y'_j D_{y'_j} f$ , as well as terms from  $R_{\text{er}}$ , which map  $(\mathcal{F}')^k \rightarrow (\mathcal{F}')^{k+1}$ . For  $k \geq 1$ ,  $f \mapsto \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} r'_j y'_j \partial_{y'_j} f$  defines a linear map on  $(\mathcal{F}')^k$ ,  $k \geq 1$ , with all eigenvalues negative since  $r'_j < 0$  for  $j = 1, \dots, s-1$ . Thus, this map is invertible, and this shows that  $b' - b'(0)$  can be conjugated away in Taylor series. Then it is straightforward to check that the infinite order vanishing error can also be removed.  $\square$

Later in this section we show that if  $p_{\text{norm}}$  is effectively nonresonant, the leading asymptotics of microlocally outgoing solutions for (6–1) and for the completely explicit operator

$$P_0 = xD_x + \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} r_j y_j D_{y_j} + \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} Q_j(x^{-1/2} y_j, x^{1/2} D_{y_j}) + b, \quad b \text{ constant} \tag{6-2}$$

are the same, if  $R \in x^{1+\epsilon} \mathcal{M}^j$  for some  $\epsilon > 0$ , that is,  $R$  is indeed an “error term”. An analogous conclusion holds in the effectively resonant case, with  $R_{\text{er}}$  included in the right hand side of (6–2).

First, however, we study the asymptotics of approximate solutions of  $P_0 u = 0$ . The constant  $b$  simply introduces a power  $x^{-ib}$  into the asymptotics, as can be seen by conjugation of  $P_0$  by  $x^{-ib}$ . Here it is convenient to have the asymptotics for the ultimately relevant case, where the operator  $xP$  is self-adjoint, stated explicitly, so we assume that  $xP_0$  is formally self-adjoint on  $L^2_{\text{sc}}(X)$ , which amounts to

$$\text{Im } b = \frac{n-1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \left( \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} r'_j + \sum_{j=s}^{m-1} r''_j \right) - \frac{n-m}{2}, \tag{6-3}$$

provided that we have already made  $Q_j$  self-adjoint as stated in Remark 6.2. Note that

$$\frac{n-m}{2} = \sum_{j=m}^{n-1} \text{Re } r'''_j.$$

For convenience, we separate the case where  $q$  is a source/sink of  $W$ , hence of the contact vector field of  $P_0$ . Recall from the previous section that

$$Y''_j = x^{-r''_j} y''_j, \quad Y''' = x^{-1/2} y''' \tag{6-4}$$

and define the exponents

$$\tilde{b} = b - i \frac{n-m}{4}, \quad a_{\beta'} = - \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} r_j \beta'_j - i \tilde{b}. \tag{6-5}$$

Notice that  $\text{Re } a_{\beta'} \rightarrow \infty$  as  $|\beta'| \rightarrow \infty$ .

**Proposition 6.3.** *Suppose that the radial point  $q$  is a source/sink of  $W$ , and (6–3) holds. Suppose that  $u \in I^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$ , and  $P_0u \in I^{(s')}(O, \mathcal{M})$  where  $s < -1/2 < s'$ . Then  $u$  takes the form*

$$u = \sum_k x^{-i\tilde{b}-i\kappa_k} w_k(Y'') v_k(Y''') + u' \tag{6-6}$$

where the sum is over  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $v_k(Y)$  is an  $L^2$ -normalized eigenfunction of the harmonic oscillator

$$\sum_{j=m}^{n-1} \tilde{Q}_j(Y_j, D_{Y_j}), \quad \tilde{Q}_j(Y_j, D_{Y_j}) = Q_j(Y_j, D_{Y_j}) - \frac{1}{4}(Y_j D_{Y_j} + D_{Y_j} Y_j), \quad Y_j = \frac{y_j}{x^{1/2}}, \tag{6-7}$$

with eigenvalue  $\kappa_k$ ,  $w_k$  are Schwartz functions with each seminorm rapidly decreasing in  $k$ , and  $u' \in I^{(s'-\epsilon)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for every  $\epsilon > 0$ .

Conversely, given any rapidly decreasing Schwartz sequence,  $w_k$ , in  $Y''$ , meaning one for which all seminorm rapidly decreasing in  $k$ , and given any  $f \in I_{sc}^{(s')}(O, \mathcal{M})$ , there exists  $u \in \bigcap_{s < -1/2} I_{sc}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  of the form (6–6) with  $WF_{sc}(P_0u - f) \cap O = \emptyset$ .

**Remark 6.4.** The result is true if we only assume  $s < s'$ . However, if  $s \geq -1/2$ , we can replace  $s$  by  $\tilde{s} > -1/2$ , apply the proposition with  $\tilde{s}$  in place of  $s$ , and then use  $u \in I_{sc}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  to show that each  $w_k$  vanishes. On the other hand, if  $s' \geq -1/2$ , the proof of the proposition shows that  $u \in I_{sc}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  implies  $u \in I_{sc}^{(s'-\epsilon)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for every  $\epsilon > 0$ .

**Proposition 6.5.** *Suppose that  $q$  is a saddle point of  $W$ , and (6–3) holds. Suppose  $u \in I^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$ , and  $P_0u \in I^{(s')}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for some  $s < s' < \infty$ . Then  $u$  takes the form*

$$u = \sum_{\beta', k} x^{a_{\beta'} - i\kappa_k} (y')^{\beta'} w_{\beta', k}(Y'') v_k(Y''') + u' \tag{6-8}$$

where the sum is over  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  and a finite set of multiindices  $\beta'$ ,  $v_k(Y)$  and  $\kappa_k$  are as above,  $w_{\beta', k}$  is a rapidly decreasing Schwartz sequence and  $u' \in I^{(s'-\epsilon)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for every  $\epsilon > 0$ .

Conversely, given any rapidly decreasing sequence of Schwartz functions  $w_{\beta', k}$ , finite in  $\beta'$  and any  $f \in I_{sc}^{(s')}(O, \mathcal{M})$  there exists  $u \in \bigcap_{s < -1/2} I_{sc}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  of the form (6–8) with  $WF_{sc}(P_0u - f) \cap O = \emptyset$ .

**Remark 6.6.** As shown later,  $x^2 D_x$  gives rise to the terms in  $\tilde{Q} - Q$  after the change of variables  $(x, y_j) \mapsto (x, y_j/x^{1/2})$ . If  $Q_j$  is self-adjoint on  $L^2(\mathbb{R}, dY_j)$  then  $\tilde{Q}_j$  has the same property.

Also, with

$$B = \frac{n-1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_j r_j'' - \frac{n-m}{4},$$

the  $(\beta', k)$  summand in (6–8) is in

$$I_{sc}^{(\text{Re } a_{\beta'} - B - 1/2 - \epsilon)}(O, \mathcal{M})$$

for every  $\epsilon > 0$ . We show below that  $\text{Im } \tilde{b} = B + d$ ,  $d = -\frac{1}{2} \sum r_j' > 0$ , so the  $(\beta', k)$  summand is in

$$I_{sc}^{(d - \sum r_j \beta_j' - 1/2 - \epsilon)}(O, \mathcal{M})$$

for every  $\epsilon > 0$ , and in view of the rapid decay in  $k$ , the same is true after the  $k$  summation. Thus, for  $u$  as in (6–8),  $u \in I_{\text{sc}}^{(d-1/2-\epsilon)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  provided  $s' > d - \frac{1}{2}$ , that is, decays by a factor  $x^d$  faster than the microlocal solutions at sources/sinks of  $W$ .

*Proof of Proposition 6.3.* Suppose that  $P_0 u = f \in I^{(s')}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for some  $s' > -1/2$ . Let  $O'$  be a  $W$ -balanced neighbourhood of  $q$  with  $\bar{O}' \subset O$ , and let  $Q \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty, 0}(X)$  satisfy  $\text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(Q) \subset O$  (that is,  $Q \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty, 0}(O)$ ) and  $\text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(\text{Id} - Q) \cap \bar{O}' = \emptyset$ , with Schwartz kernel supported in  $U \times U$ ,

$$U = \{0 \leq x < \delta, |y_j| < \delta \text{ for all } j\}.$$

(See (5–18) for the definition of the diffeomorphism  $\Phi$ , the coordinates  $Y_j$ , etc.) Then, as noted in (5–19), by the definition of  $I_{\text{sc}}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$ ,  $\tilde{u} = Qu$  satisfies

$$(Y'')^{\gamma''} (Y''')^{\gamma'''} (xD_x)^a D_{Y''}^{\beta''} D_{Y'''}^{\beta'''} \tilde{u} \in x^s L_{\text{sc}}^2(X)$$

for all  $a, \beta'', \beta''', \gamma''$  and  $\gamma'''$ . Here  $\tilde{u}$  is a microlocalization of  $u$  since  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u - Qu) \subset \text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(\text{Id} - Q)$ , so  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u - Qu) \cap O' = \emptyset$ . Moreover,

$$P_0(Qu) = QP_0 u + [P_0, Q]u = Qf + f', \quad f' \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X),$$

since  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u) \cap O \subset \{q\}$ , while  $\text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}([P_0, Q]) \subset \text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(Q) \cap \text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(\text{Id} - Q) \subset O \setminus \bar{O}'$ , so  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u) \cap \text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}([P_0, Q]) = \emptyset$ . Thus, with  $\tilde{f} = Qf + f'$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} P_0 \tilde{u} &= \tilde{f}, \\ (Y'')^{\gamma''} (Y''')^{\gamma'''} (xD_x)^a D_{Y''}^{\beta''} D_{Y'''}^{\beta'''} \tilde{f} &\in x^{s'} L_{\text{sc}}^2(X), \end{aligned} \tag{6-9}$$

for all  $a, \beta'', \beta''', \gamma''$  and  $\gamma'''$ .

To prove first part of the proposition, it thus suffices to show that, with the notation of (6–6),

$$\tilde{u} = \sum_k x^{-i\tilde{b} - i\kappa_k} w_k(Y'') v_k(Y''') + u'.$$

Writing the operator  $P_0$  in the coordinates  $x, Y'', Y'''$  we have

$$P_0 = xD_x|_Y + \sum_j \tilde{Q}_j(Y_j''', D_{Y_j'''}) + \tilde{b} \tag{6-10}$$

with  $\tilde{b} = b - i\frac{n-m}{4}$  as in (6–5). Formal self-adjointness of  $xP_0$ , that is, (6–3), requires that

$$\text{Im } \tilde{b} = \frac{n-1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_j r_j'' - \frac{n-m}{4} \equiv B. \tag{6-11}$$

As already remarked, (6–9), which states that  $\tilde{f}$  is conormal in  $x$ , and Schwartz in  $Y'', Y'''$ , and belongs to  $x^{s'} L^2(dx dy/x^{n+1})$ , or in terms of the  $Y$  coordinates, to  $x^{s'+n/2-\sum r_j''/2-(n-m)/4} L^2(dx dY/x)$ , implies (by conormality) that

$$\tilde{f} \in x^{s'+1/2+B-\epsilon} L^\infty$$

for every  $\epsilon > 0$ , where  $B$  is defined by (6–11). More precisely, for all  $a, \beta, \gamma''$  and  $\gamma'''$ ,

$$(Y'')^{\gamma''} (Y''')^{\gamma'''} (xD_x)^a D_{Y''}^{\beta''} D_{Y'''}^{\beta'''} \tilde{f} \in x^{s'+1/2+B-\epsilon} L^\infty$$

for every  $\epsilon > 0$ . Conversely these conditions imply that  $\tilde{f}$  satisfies (6–9) with  $s'$  replaced by  $s' - \epsilon$  for every  $\epsilon > 0$ .

Writing  $\tilde{f}$  in the form

$$\tilde{f}(x, Y'', Y''') = \sum_k f_k(x, Y'') v_k(Y'''),$$

where  $f_k$  is conormal in  $x$ , rapidly decreasing as a Schwartz sequence in  $Y''$ , a particular solution to  $P_0 \tilde{u} = \tilde{f}$ , is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{u} &= \sum_k u_k(x, Y'') v_k(Y'''), \\ u_k &= -ix^{-i\tilde{b}-i\kappa_k} \int_0^x f_k(t, Y'') t^{i\tilde{b}+i\kappa_k} \frac{dt}{t}. \end{aligned} \tag{6–12}$$

Since  $s' + 1/2 > 0$ , this integral is convergent and  $\tilde{u} \in I^{(s'-\epsilon)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for every  $\epsilon > 0$ .

On the other hand, the general solution to  $P_0 \tilde{u} = 0$  with  $\tilde{u}$  Schwartz in  $Y''$  and  $Y'''$  is given by

$$\tilde{u} = \sum_k x^{-i\tilde{b}-i\kappa_k} w_k(Y'') v_k(Y'''),$$

where  $w_k$  is rapidly decreasing in  $k$ . Since any solution is the sum of the particular solution (6–12) and some homogeneous solution, the first half of the proposition follows.

In fact, the second half also follows by defining

$$\tilde{u} = \sum_k u_k(x, Y'') v_k(Y''') + \sum_k x^{-i\tilde{b}-i\kappa_k} w_k(Y'') v_k(Y'''),$$

with  $u_k$  as in (6–12). Multiplying by a cutoff function  $\phi \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(X)$  which is identically 1 near  $(0, 0, \dots, 0)$ , it follows that  $u = \phi \tilde{u}$  satisfies all requirements.  $\square$

*Proof of Proposition 6.5.* We use a similar argument to prove this result. Let  $O'$ ,  $Q$ , etc., be as in the previous proof. With  $\tilde{u} = Qu$ , as noted in (5–19),

$$(Y'')^{\gamma''} (Y''')^{\gamma'''} (x D_x)^a D_{y'}^{\beta'} D_{Y''}^{\beta''} D_{Y'''}^{\beta'''} \tilde{u} \in x^s L_{sc}^2(X), \tag{6–13}$$

for all  $a, \beta, \gamma''$  and  $\gamma'''$ . One of the main differences with the proof of Proposition 6.3 is that microlocalization introduces a nontrivial error, that is,  $P_0 \tilde{u}$  is not globally well-behaved (not as good as  $f$  was microlocally). However, the error is supported away from  $y' = 0$ . Indeed, now  $\text{WF}_{sc}(u) \cap O \subset S$ , and

$$\tilde{f} = P_0 \tilde{u} = Qf + f', \quad f' = [P_0, Q]u.$$

Here  $\text{WF}'_{sc}([P_0, Q]) \cap S \subset \{|y'| > \delta_0\}$  for some  $\delta_0 > 0$ , so  $f' \in I_{sc}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  in fact satisfies

$$(Y'')^{\gamma''} (Y''')^{\gamma'''} (x D_x)^a D_{y'}^{\beta'} D_{Y''}^{\beta''} D_{Y'''}^{\beta'''} f' \in x^s L_{sc}^2(X)$$

for all  $a, \beta', \beta''$  and  $\beta'''$ ,  $\gamma''$  and  $\gamma'''$ , with the improved conclusion

$$\phi(y')(Y'')^{\gamma''} (Y''')^{\gamma'''} (x D_x)^a D_{y'}^{\beta'} D_{Y''}^{\beta''} D_{Y'''}^{\beta'''} f' \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(X)$$

if  $\phi$  is supported in  $|y'| < \delta_0$ . Correspondingly,

$$\phi(y')(Y'')^{\gamma''} (Y''')^{\gamma'''} (x D_x)^a D_{y'}^{\beta'} D_{Y''}^{\beta''} D_{Y'''}^{\beta'''} \tilde{f} \in x^{s'} L_{sc}^2(X). \tag{6–14}$$

The operator  $P_0$  in the coordinates  $x, y', Y'', Y'''$  now takes the form

$$P_0 = x D_x|_{y', Y'', Y'''} + \sum_j r'_j y'_j D_{y'_j} + \sum_j \tilde{Q}_j(Y_j''', D_{Y_j'''}) + \tilde{b}, \tag{6-15}$$

with  $\tilde{b} = b - i\frac{n-m}{4}$  as in (6-5). Again, (6-14) implies that  $\tilde{f}$  is conormal in  $x$ , smooth in  $y'$ , and Schwartz in  $Y'', Y'''$ , and belongs to  $x^{s'+1/2+B-\epsilon} L^\infty$  for every  $\epsilon > 0$ , where  $B$  is defined by (6-11), in the precise sense that for all  $a, \beta, \gamma''$  and  $\gamma'''$ ,

$$\phi(y')(Y'')^{\gamma''} (Y''')^{\gamma'''} (x D_x)^a D_{Y''}^{\beta''} D_{Y'''}^{\beta'''} \tilde{f} \in x^{s'+1/2+B-\epsilon} L^\infty$$

for every  $\epsilon > 0$ . However, now formal self-adjointness of  $x P_0$  requires that

$$\text{Im } \tilde{b} = B + d, \quad d = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_j r'_j > 0,$$

so there is a discrepancy of  $d$  compared with the previous proposition. Write  $\tilde{f}$  in the form

$$\tilde{f}(x, Y'', Y''') = \sum_k f_k(x, y', Y'') v_k(Y'''),$$

where  $f_k$  is rapidly decreasing sequence which is conormal in  $x$ , smooth in  $y'$  and Schwartz in  $Y''$ .

We start by describing solutions of the homogeneous equation  $P_0 \tilde{u} = 0$  in  $U$  which in addition satisfy (6-13). Decomposing  $\tilde{u}$  in terms of the  $v_k$ , and factoring out a power of  $x$  for convenience, that is, writing  $\tilde{u} = \sum_k x^{-i\tilde{b}-i\kappa_k} u_k(x, y', Y'') v_k(Y''')$ , we see that the coefficients  $u_k$  satisfy

$$\left( x \partial_x|_{y', Y'', Y'''} + \sum_j r'_j y'_j \partial_{y'_j} \right) u_k = 0.$$

Since  $\tilde{u}$  is smooth in the interior of  $U$ ,  $P_0 \tilde{u} = 0$  amounts to demanding that  $u_k$  be constant along each integral curve segment of the vector field  $x \partial_x + \sum_j r'_j y'_j \partial_{y'_j}$ , with the value of  $\tilde{u}$  depending smoothly on the choice of the integral curve. (We remark that  $U$  is convex for this vector field;  $|y'|$  is increasing as  $x \rightarrow 0$ .) Thus,  $u_k(x, y', Y'') = \hat{u}_k(Y', Y'')$  with  $\hat{u}_k$  smooth in  $Y'$  and Schwartz in  $Y''$ . Here  $Y'_j = y'_j/x^{r'_j}$ ; note that  $r'_j < 0$ . Expanding  $\hat{u}_k$  in Taylor series around  $Y' = 0$  to order  $N$ , we see that

$$u_k(x, y', Y'') = \sum_{|\beta'| \leq N-1} x^{-\sum_j r'_j \beta'_j} (y')^{\beta'} w_{\beta', k}(Y'')$$

is a finite sum of terms of the form  $x^{-\sum_j r'_j \beta'_j} (y')^{\beta'} \hat{u}_{k, \beta'}(Y', Y'')$  with  $\hat{u}_{k, \beta'}$  smooth (Schwartz in  $Y''$ ), where the sum runs over  $\beta'$  with  $|\beta'| = N$ . Thus, given any  $s''$  (for example,  $s'' = s'$ ), we can choose  $N$  sufficiently large so this difference lies in  $I_{sc}^{(s'')}(O, \mathcal{M})$ , which means it is ignorable for our purposes. Thus, the general solution to  $P_0 \tilde{u} = 0$  in  $U$  which satisfies (6-13) is given by

$$\tilde{u} = \sum_{\beta', k} x^{a_{\beta'} - i\kappa_k} (y')^{\beta'} w_{\beta', k}(Y'') v_k(Y'''),$$

modulo any  $I_{sc}^{(s'')}(O, \mathcal{M})$  (where the sum is understood as a finite one, due to the remark above), where the seminorms of  $w_{\beta', k}$  are rapidly decreasing in  $k$  for each  $\beta'$ .

In expressing a particular solution  $\tilde{u}$  of  $P_0\tilde{u} = f$  in terms of  $f$ , we need to integrate along integral curves of the vector field  $x\partial_x + \sum_j r'_j y'_j \partial_{y'_j}$ , and since  $r'_j < 0$ ,  $|y'| \rightarrow \infty$  as  $x \rightarrow 0$  along such curves (unless  $y' = 0$ ); in fact  $|y'|$  is increasing as  $x \rightarrow 0$  as mentioned above. So we cannot integrate down to  $x = 0$ . Instead we fix an  $x_0 > 0$  and use the formula

$$u_k(x, y', Y'') = \left(\frac{x}{x_0}\right)^{-i\tilde{b}-i\kappa_k} u_k\left(x_0, \left(\frac{x}{x_0}\right)^{-r'_j} y'_j, Y''\right) + ix^{-i\tilde{b}-i\kappa_k} \int_{x_0}^x f_k\left(t, \left(\frac{x}{t}\right)^{-r'_j} y'_j, Y''\right) t^{i\tilde{b}+i\kappa_k} \frac{dt}{t}. \tag{6-16}$$

Notice that  $u_k(x_\sharp, y'_\sharp, Y''_\sharp)$  depends only on  $f_k$  evaluated at points  $(x, y', Y'')$  with  $|y'| \leq |y'_\sharp|$ . Thus, (6-14) can be used to deduce properties of  $u_k$ , hence of  $\tilde{u}$ , in  $|y'| < \delta_0$ .

If  $s' < -1/2 + d$ , then (6-16) gives  $\phi(y')\tilde{u} \in I^{(s'-\epsilon)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for every  $\epsilon > 0$ , with  $\phi$  as in (6-14). If  $s' \geq -1/2 + d$ , then  $\phi(y')\tilde{u} \in I^{(-1/2+d-\epsilon)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for every  $\epsilon > 0$ . However, this is actually a sum of terms solving the homogeneous equation, plus a function in  $I^{(s'-\epsilon)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for every  $\epsilon > 0$ . For simplicity we show this only in the case that  $-1/2 + d < s' < -1/2 + d + |r'_{s-1}|$ . Then we observe that  $(x/x_0)^{-i\tilde{b}-i\kappa_k} \tilde{u}(x_0, 0, Y'')$  is a solution of the homogeneous equation, while the difference

$$\begin{aligned} & \left(\frac{x}{x_0}\right)^{-i\tilde{b}-i\kappa_k} \tilde{u}(x_0, \left(\frac{x}{x_0}\right)^{-r'_j} y'_j, Y'') - \left(\frac{x}{x_0}\right)^{-i\tilde{b}-i\kappa_k} \tilde{u}(x_0, 0, Y'') \\ &= \sum_j \left(\frac{x}{x_0}\right)^{-r'_j} \int_0^1 y'_j \partial_{y'_j} \left( \tilde{u}\left(x_0, \tau \left(\frac{x}{x_0}\right)^{-r'_j} y'_j, Y''\right) \right) d\tau \end{aligned}$$

has decay at least  $x^{-r'_{s-1}}$  better, hence yields a term in  $I^{(s'-\epsilon)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for every  $\epsilon > 0$ . Similarly, if we replace  $f_k(t, (\frac{x}{t})^{-r'_j} y'_j, Y'')$  in the integral by  $f_k(t, 0, Y'')$  then we get a homogeneous term, while the difference gives a term in  $I^{(s'-\epsilon)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for every  $\epsilon > 0$ . The argument can be repeated, removing more and more terms in the Taylor series for  $\tilde{u}$  and  $\tilde{f}$ , for larger values of  $s'$ . Since any solution is the sum of the particular solution above and the general solution, the first half of the proposition follows with  $O$  replaced by a smaller neighbourhood  $O''$  of  $q$ . However, we recover the original statement by using the real principal type parametrix construction of Duistermaat and Hörmander [1972].

The second half can be proved as in the previous proposition. Fix some  $x_0 > 0$ , and let  $u_k$  be given by the second term on the right hand side of (6-16), and let  $\hat{u} = \sum_k u_k(x, Y'')v_k(Y''')$ . Then  $P_0\hat{u} = f$ , and as shown above,  $\hat{u}$  has the form

$$\hat{u} = \sum_{\beta', k} x^{\alpha_{\beta'}-i\kappa_k} (y')^{\beta'} \hat{w}_{\beta', k}(Y'')v_k(Y''') + \hat{u}',$$

with  $\hat{u}' \in I_{sc}^{(s'-\epsilon)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for all  $\epsilon > 0$ . Then with

$$\tilde{u} = \sum_k u_k(x, Y'')v_k(Y''') + \sum_{\beta', k} x^{\alpha_{\beta'}-i\kappa_k} (w_{\beta', k}(Y'') - \hat{w}_{\beta', k}(Y''))v_k(Y'''),$$

$u = \phi\tilde{u}$ ,  $\phi \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(X)$  identically 1 near  $(0, \dots, 0)$ ,  $u$  satisfies all requirements. □



These results on the explicit normal form  $P_0$  then allow us to parameterize microlocally outgoing solutions for every effectively nonresonant critical point.

**Theorem 6.7.** *Suppose that  $P(\sigma)$  is effectively nonresonant at  $q$ , with normal form  $P_{\text{norm}}$  near  $q$  as in Lemma 6.1, and (6–3) holds.*

- (i) *If in addition  $q$  is a source/sink of  $W$ , then any microlocally outgoing solution  $u$  of  $P_{\text{norm}}$  has the form (6–6), and conversely given any Schwartz sequence of Schwartz functions  $w_k$  there is a microlocally outgoing solution  $u$  of  $P_{\text{norm}}$  which has the form (6–6). Thus, microlocal solutions at a source/sink of  $W$  are parameterized by Schwartz functions of the variables  $(Y'', Y''')$ .*
- (ii) *If  $q$  is a saddle point of  $W$ , then all microlocally outgoing solutions are in  $x^{-1/2+\epsilon}L^2$  for some  $\epsilon > 0$ . For each monomial  $(y')^\beta$  in the variables  $y'$ , each  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  and each Schwartz function  $w(Y'')$  there is a microlocally outgoing solution of the form*

$$u = \sum_k x^{\alpha_{\beta'} - i\kappa k} (y')^{\beta'} w(Y'') v_k(Y''') + u', \tag{6–17}$$

where  $u'$  is in a strictly smaller weighted  $L^2$  space than  $u$ , and every microlocally outgoing solution is a sum of such solutions, with the  $w = w_{k,\beta'}$  rapidly decreasing as  $k \rightarrow \infty$  in every seminorm.

*Proof.* First,  $P_{\text{norm}} = \lambda(P_0 + R)$ ,  $R \in x^\epsilon \mathcal{M}^j$ ,  $\epsilon > 0$ . Thus, if  $O$  is a neighbourhood of  $q$  as above,  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(P_{\text{norm}}u) \cap O = \emptyset$ , then  $u \in I_{\text{sc}}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for all  $s < -1/2$ , so  $Ru \in I_{\text{sc}}^{(s')}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for some  $s' > 1/2$ . Hence  $P_0u = \lambda^{-1}P_{\text{norm}}u - Ru \in I_{\text{sc}}^{(s')}(O, \mathcal{M})$ .

If  $q$  is a source/sink of  $W$ , then Proposition 6.3 is applicable, and we deduce that  $u$  is microlocally of the form (6–6). Moreover, if  $q$  is a source/sink of  $W$ , then given any Schwartz sequence of Schwartz functions  $w_k$ , let  $u_0 \in \bigcap_{s < -1/2} I_{\text{sc}}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  be of the form (6–6) with  $P_0u_0 \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$ . We construct  $u_k \in \bigcap_{r < -1/2 - k\epsilon} I_{\text{sc}}^{(r)}(O, \mathcal{M})$ ,  $k \geq 1$ , inductively so that  $P_0u_k + Ru_{k-1} \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$  for  $k \geq 1$ ; this can be done by the second half of Proposition 6.3. Asymptotically summing  $\sum_k u_k$  to some  $u \in \bigcap_{s < -1/2} I_{\text{sc}}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  gives a microlocally outgoing solution with the prescribed asymptotics, completing the proof of the theorem in this case.

If  $q$  is a saddle point of  $W$ , we apply Proposition 6.5 with  $s' > -1/2$  as in the first paragraph of the proof. If  $\epsilon' > 0$  is sufficiently small, all of the terms in (6–8) are in  $I_{\text{sc}}^{(-1/2+\epsilon')}(O, \mathcal{M})$  proving the first claim. To show the next, let  $u_0 = x^{\alpha_{\beta'} - i\kappa k} (y')^{\beta'} w(Y'') v_k(Y''')$ , so  $P_0u_0 = 0$  and  $u_0 \in I_{\text{sc}}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for any  $s < -1/2 + d$ . We construct  $u_k$  inductively as above, using Proposition 6.5, to obtain  $u$ . □

**Remark 6.8.** From (6–6) or (6–17) it is not hard to derive the asymptotic expansion of eigenfunctions of the original operator  $\Delta + V - \sigma$ ; we need only apply the Fourier integral operator  $F^{-1}$  arising by composing any Fourier integral operators with canonical relation given by the contact maps in Lemma 2.7 and Theorem 3.11 to these expansions. In fact, as mentioned in Remark 3.14, this Fourier integral operator can be taken to be a composition of a change of coordinates with multiplication by an oscillatory function if  $q$  is either a source/sink (so  $q \in \text{Min}_+(\sigma)$ ) or the linearization of  $W$  has no nonreal eigenvalues (so there are no  $y'''$  variables).

In the case of a radial point  $q \in \text{Min}_+(\sigma)$ , in appropriate coordinates  $y$  on  $\partial X$ , the expansion takes the form

$$u = e^{i\Phi(y)/x} \sum_k x^{-i\tilde{b}-i\kappa_k} w_k(Y'') v_k(Y''') + u', \quad u' \in I^{-\frac{1}{2}+\epsilon}(O, \mathcal{M}) \text{ for some } \epsilon > 0 \tag{6-18}$$

where  $\Phi$  is a smooth function (it parameterizes the Legendrian submanifold which is the image of the zero section under the canonical relation of  $F^{-1}$ ). For a given  $\sigma$ , only a finite number of terms in the Taylor series for  $\Phi$  are relevant. Similarly in the case of radial points  $q \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma) \setminus \text{Min}_+(\sigma)$ , the expansion (6-19) takes the form

$$u = e^{i\Phi(y)/x} \sum_k x^{\alpha_{\beta'}-i\kappa_k} (y')^{\beta'} w(Y'') v_k(Y''') + u', \tag{6-19}$$

with  $\Phi$  smooth. Again it parameterizes the image of the zero section under the canonical relation of  $F^{-1}$ . In this case, the value of  $\Phi$  on the unstable manifold  $\{y'' = y''' = 0\}$  is essential, but only a finite number of terms in the Taylor series for  $\Phi$  about this unstable manifold are relevant.

These expansions were obtained directly in Part I (that is, without going via a normal form) in the two dimensional case.

### 7. Effectively resonant operators

If  $P$  is effectively resonant, the simple expressions (6-6) and (6-8) need to be replaced by slightly more complicated ones in which positive integral powers of  $\log x$  also appear. Essentially, instead of powers, or Schwartz functions, of  $y_j/x^{r_j}$ , factors of  $\log x$  also arise in the expressions for the  $Y_l$ .

First define a change of coordinates inductively that simplifies the vector field

$$V = (x D_x) + \sum_{j=1}^{m-1} (r_j y_j + \mathcal{P}_j(y_s, \dots, y_{j-1})) D_{y_j} \tag{7-1}$$

that appears in (6-1) as the combinations of the linear terms  $\sum r_j y_j D_{y_j}$  and the effectively resonant vector fields in  $R_{\text{er}}$ . (Note that  $r_j y_j$  and  $\mathcal{P}_j(y_s, \dots, y_{j-1})$  are both homogeneous of degree  $r_j$ .) We do this in two steps to clarify the argument, first only dealing with the  $y''$  terms, that is,  $j = s, \dots, m - 1$ .

The coordinates  $Y_j$ ,  $j = s, \dots, m - 1$ , are a modification of the coordinates  $y_j/x^{r_j}$  that appear in (6-4), so that  $Y_j - y_j/x^{r_j}$  are polynomials  $\mathcal{P}_j^\sharp$  in  $Y_s, \dots, Y_{j-1}$ ,  $t = \log x$ . Thus, we let

$$Y_s = \frac{y_s}{x^{r_s}}, \quad \mathcal{P}_s^\sharp = 0, \quad \bar{Y}_s(Y_s, \log x) = Y_s + \mathcal{P}_s^\sharp(\log x)$$

and provided that  $Y_s, \dots, Y_{j-1}, \mathcal{P}_s^\sharp, \dots, \mathcal{P}_{j-1}^\sharp$  have been defined, we let

$$\mathcal{P}_j^\sharp(Y_s, \dots, Y_{j-1}, t) = \int_0^t \mathcal{P}_j(\bar{Y}_s(Y_s, t'), \dots, \bar{Y}_{j-1}(Y_s, \dots, Y_{j-1}, t')) dt',$$

$$Y_j = \frac{y_j}{x^{r_j}} - \mathcal{P}_j^\sharp(Y_s, \dots, Y_{j-1}, \log x),$$

$$\bar{Y}_j = Y_j + \mathcal{P}_j^\sharp(Y_s, \dots, Y_{j-1}, \log x), \quad j = s, \dots, m - 1.$$

The point of the construction is that  $V$  annihilates  $Y_j$  for all  $j$ . This can be seen iteratively: for  $Y_s$  this is straightforward, and if  $VY_s = \dots = VY_{j-1} = 0$  then (with  $\partial_t \mathcal{P}_j^\sharp$  denoting the derivative with respect to the last variable,  $t = \log x$ )

$$\begin{aligned} VY_j &= -r_j \frac{y_j}{x^{r_j}} + (r_j y_j + \mathcal{P}_j(y_s, \dots, y_{j-1}))x^{-r_j} - (\partial_t \mathcal{P}_j^\sharp)(Y_s, \dots, Y_{j-1}, \log x) \\ &= \mathcal{P}_j(y_s x^{-r_s}, \dots, y_{j-1} x^{-r_{j-1}}) - \mathcal{P}_j(\bar{Y}_s(Y_s, \log x), \dots, \bar{Y}_{j-1}(Y_s, \dots, Y_{j-1}, \log x)) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

in view of the definition of  $Y_s, \dots, Y_{j-1}$  and  $\bar{Y}_s, \dots, \bar{Y}_{j-1}$ .

One can deal with the  $j = 1, \dots, s-1$  terms similarly. We define  $\mathcal{P}_j^\sharp$ ,  $Y_j$  and  $\bar{Y}_j$  inductively as above, starting with  $Y_{s-1}$ . Thus, we let

$$Y_{s-1} = \frac{y_{s-1}}{x^{r_{s-1}}}, \quad \mathcal{P}_{s-1}^\sharp = 0, \quad \bar{Y}_{s-1}(Y_{s-1}, \log x) = Y_{s-1} + \mathcal{P}_{s-1}^\sharp(\log x)$$

and provided that  $Y_{j+1}, \dots, Y_{s-1}$ ,  $\mathcal{P}_{j+1}^\sharp, \dots, \mathcal{P}_{s-1}^\sharp$  have been defined, we let

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{P}_j^\sharp(Y_{j+1}, \dots, Y_{s-1}, t) &= \int_0^t \mathcal{P}_j(\bar{Y}_{j+1}(Y_{j+1}, \dots, Y_{s-1}, t'), \dots, \bar{Y}_{s-1}(Y_{s-1}, t')) dt', \\ Y_j &= \frac{y_j}{x^{r_j}} - \mathcal{P}_j^\sharp(Y_{j+1}, \dots, Y_{s-1}, \log x), \\ \bar{Y}_j &= Y_j + \mathcal{P}_j^\sharp(Y_{j+1}, \dots, Y_{s-1}, \log x), \quad j = 1, \dots, s-1. \end{aligned}$$

With these definitions, in the coordinates  $X = x, Y_1, \dots, Y_{m-1}, y_m, \dots, y_{n-1}$ , that is,  $(X, Y', Y'', y''')$ , which correspond to a blow-up of  $x = y_s = \dots = y_{m-1} = 0$ ,  $V = X^2 D_X$ .

The zeroth order term is a polynomial  $\mathcal{P}_0$  in  $y_s, \dots, y_{m-1}$  which is homogeneous of degree 1 (where  $y_j$  has degree  $r_j$ ). Thus,

$$x^{-1} \mathcal{P}_0(y_s, \dots, y_{m-1}) = \mathcal{P}_0(\bar{Y}_s(Y_s, \log x), \dots, \bar{Y}_{m-1}(Y_s, \dots, Y_{m-1}, \log x)).$$

Let

$$\mathcal{P}_0^\sharp(Y_s, \dots, Y_{j-1}, t) = \int_0^t \mathcal{P}_0(\bar{Y}_s(Y_s, t'), \dots, \bar{Y}_{j-1}(Y_s, \dots, Y_{j-1}, t')) dt',$$

which is thus a polynomial in  $Y_s, \dots, Y_{j-1}, t$ . Then  $e^{i\mathcal{P}_0^\sharp(Y_s, \dots, Y_{j-1}, \log x)}$  can be used as an integrating factor, conjugating  $\tilde{P}$ , to remove the zeroth order term in  $R_{\text{er}}$ .

Finally, to put the quadratic terms in a convenient form, we let

$$Y_j = \frac{y_j}{x^{1/2}}, \quad j = m, \dots, n-1$$

as before.

Suppose first that  $\mathcal{P}_0 = 0$ . With our definition of the  $Y_j$ , (6–10), respectively (6–15), holds if  $q$  is a source/sink, respectively saddle point, of  $V_0$ . Thus, the statement and the proof of Proposition 6.3 holds without any changes, while the statement and the proof of Proposition 6.5 carry over provided  $x^{a_{\beta'}}(y')^{\beta'}$  is replaced by  $x^{-i\tilde{b}}(Y')^{\beta'}$ . A minor difference is that slightly more effort is required to show

that  $|y'|$  decreases on the integral curves of the vector field (7-1) inside  $|y'| < \delta_1$  for  $\delta_1 > 0$  small. Namely we need to use that, as  $\mathcal{P}_j, j = 1, \dots, s - 1$  have no linear or constant terms by Lemma 6.1,  $V|y'|^2 = \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} r_j y_j^2 + \mathcal{O}(|y'|^3) \leq r_{s-1}|y'|^2 + \mathcal{O}(|y'|^3), r_{s-1} < 0$ , to conclude that  $V|y'|^2 \leq 0$  for  $|y'| < \delta_1, \delta_1 > 0$  small.

In general, with  $\tilde{b} = b - \frac{1}{4}i(n - m)$  as in (6-5), Equations (6-10) and (6-15) are replaced by

$$P_0 = xD_x|_Y + \sum_j \tilde{Q}_j(Y_j''', D_{Y_j'''}) + \mathcal{P}_0 + \tilde{b},$$

$$P_0 = xD_x|_{y', Y'', Y'''} + \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} (r'_j y'_j + \mathcal{P}_j) D_{y'_j} + \sum_j \tilde{Q}_j(Y_j''', D_{Y_j'''}) + \mathcal{P}_0 + \tilde{b},$$

respectively. Thus we obtain,

$$e^{i\mathcal{P}_0^\sharp} P_0 e^{-i\mathcal{P}_0^\sharp} = xD_x|_Y + \sum_j \tilde{Q}_j(Y_j''', D_{Y_j'''}) + \tilde{b},$$

$$e^{i\mathcal{P}_0^\sharp} P_0 e^{-i\mathcal{P}_0^\sharp} = xD_x|_{y', Y'', Y'''} + \sum_{j=1}^{s-1} (r'_j y'_j + \mathcal{P}_j) D_{y'_j} + \sum_j \tilde{Q}_j(Y_j''', D_{Y_j'''}) + \tilde{b},$$

respectively. Since multiplication by  $e^{\pm i\mathcal{P}_0^\sharp}$  preserves  $I_{sc}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$ , the rest of the proof of the propositions is applicable with  $u$  replaced by  $e^{i\mathcal{P}_0^\sharp} u, f = P_0 u$  replaced by  $e^{i\mathcal{P}_0^\sharp} f$ . We thus deduce the following analogues of Propositions 6.3-6.5 in the effectively resonant case.

**Proposition 7.1.** *Suppose that the radial point  $q$  is a source/sink of  $W$ , and (6-3) holds, that  $u \in I^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$ , and  $P_0 u \in I^{(s')}(O, \mathcal{M})$  where  $s < -1/2 < s'$ . Then  $u$  takes the form*

$$u = \sum_k x^{-i\tilde{b} - i\kappa_k} e^{-i\mathcal{P}_0^\sharp} w_k(Y'') v_k(Y''') + u' \tag{7-2}$$

where the sum is over  $k \in \mathbb{N}, v_k(Y)$  is an  $L^2$ -normalized eigenfunction of the harmonic oscillator

$$\sum_{j=m}^{n-1} \tilde{Q}_j(Y_j, D_{Y_j}), \tilde{Q}_j(Y_j, D_{Y_j}) = Q_j(Y_j, D_{Y_j}) - \frac{1}{4}(Y_j D_{Y_j} + D_{Y_j} Y_j), Y_j = \frac{y_j}{x^{1/2}},$$

with eigenvalue  $\kappa_k, w_k$  are Schwartz functions with each seminorm rapidly decreasing in  $k$ , and  $u' \in I^{(s'-\epsilon)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for every  $\epsilon > 0$ .

Conversely, given any sequence  $w_k$  of Schwartz functions in  $Y''$  with each seminorm rapidly decreasing in  $k$ , and given any  $f \in I_{sc}^{(s')}(O, \mathcal{M})$ , there exists  $u \in \bigcap_{s < -1/2} I_{sc}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  of the form (7-2) with  $WF_{sc}(P_0 u - f) \cap O = \emptyset$ .

**Proposition 7.2.** *Suppose that  $q$  is a saddle point of  $W$ , and (6-3) holds, that  $u \in I^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$ , and  $P_0 u \in I^{(s')}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for some  $s < s' < \infty$ . Then  $u$  takes the form*

$$u = \sum_{\beta', k} x^{-i\tilde{b} - i\kappa_k} (Y')^{\beta'} e^{-i\mathcal{P}_0^\sharp} w_{\beta', k}(Y'') v_k(Y''') + u' \tag{7-3}$$

where the sum is over  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  and a finite set of multiindices  $\beta', v_k(Y)$  and  $\kappa_k$  are as above,  $w_{\beta', k}$  are Schwartz functions with each seminorm rapidly decreasing in  $k$ , and  $u' \in I^{(s'-\epsilon)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  for every  $\epsilon > 0$ .

Conversely, given any sequence of Schwartz functions  $w_{\beta',k}$ , finite in  $\beta'$  with each seminorm rapidly decreasing in  $k$ , and any  $f \in I_{sc}^{(s')}(O, \mathcal{M})$  there exists  $u \in \bigcap_{s < -1/2} I_{sc}^{(s)}(O, \mathcal{M})$  of the form (7-3) with  $WF_{sc}(P_0u - f) \cap O = \emptyset$ .

We thus deduce the following analogue of Theorem 6.7, with a similar proof.

**Theorem 7.3.** *Suppose that  $P(\sigma)$  is effectively resonant at  $q$ , with normal form  $P_{norm}$  near  $q$  as in Lemma 6.1, and (6-3) holds.*

- (i) *If in addition  $q$  is a source/sink of  $W$ , then any microlocal solution  $u$  of  $P_{norm}$  has the form (7-2), and conversely given any rapidly Schwartz sequence of functions  $w_k$  there is a microlocally outgoing solution  $u$  of  $P_{norm}$  which has the form (7-2). Thus, microlocal eigenfunctions at a source/sink are parameterized by Schwartz functions of the variables  $(Y'', Y''')$ .*
- (ii) *If  $q$  is a saddle point of  $W$ , then all microlocal solutions are in  $x^{-1/2+\epsilon}L^2$  for some  $\epsilon > 0$ . For each monomial in the variables  $Y'$ , each  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  and each Schwartz function  $w(Y'')$  there is a microlocally outgoing solution of the form*

$$u = x^{-i\tilde{b}-i\kappa_k} e^{-i\varphi_0^\#(Y')} \beta' w(Y'') v_k(Y''') + u',$$

where  $u'$  is in a strictly faster decaying weighted  $L^2$  space than  $u$ , and every microlocally outgoing solution is a sum of such solutions, with the  $w = w_{k,\beta'}$  rapidly decreasing as  $k \rightarrow \infty$  in every seminorm.

### 8. From microlocal to approximate eigenfunctions

We are interested in the structure of (global) eigenfunctions of  $\Delta + V$ . While in the first half of the paper a rather general element  $P \in \Psi_{sc}^{*,-1}(X)$  was considered, from now on attention is limited to

$$H = \Delta + V \in \Psi_{sc}^{*,0}(X), \quad H(\sigma) = H - \sigma,$$

in particular the order of  $H$  at  $\partial X$  is 0.

In the next section we obtain an iterative description of the “smooth” eigenfunctions in terms of the microlocal eigenspaces. As the first step, we show that if  $q$  is a radial point for  $H(\sigma) = H - \sigma$ , then elements of  $E_{mic,+}(q, \sigma)$ , which are the microlocally outgoing eigenfunctions near  $q$ , have representatives satisfying  $(H - \sigma)u \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(X)$ , that is, they extend to approximate eigenfunctions, with  $WF_{sc}(u)$  a subset of the forward flow-out of  $q$ . Stated explicitly this is:

**Proposition 8.1.** *If  $q \in RP_+(\sigma)$  then every element of  $E_{mic,+}(q, \sigma)$  has a representative  $u$  such that  $(H - \sigma)u \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(X)$ , and  $WF_{sc}(u) \subset \Phi_+(\{q\})$ .*

**Remark 8.2.** From this result, given  $u$  as in Proposition 8.1 it is easy to produce an exact eigenfunction  $v$  such that  $WF_{sc}(v) \cap \{v \geq 0\} \subset \Phi_+(\{q\})$ : we simply take  $v = u - R(\sigma - i0)(H - \sigma)u$ .

The key ingredient of the proof, as in the two-dimensional case studied in [Hassell et al. 2004], is the microlocal solvability of the eigenequation through radial points. To avoid a microlocal construction along the lines of Hörmander [1971], we introduce, as in Lemma 5.3 of Part I, an operator  $\tilde{H}$  which arises from  $H$  by altering  $V$  appropriately. This is chosen to be equal to  $H$  near the radial point in question

but to have no other radial points in  $\text{RP}_+(\sigma)$  at which  $\nu$  takes a smaller value. One may then assume, in any argument concerning  $q \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$ , that there is no  $q' \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$  with  $\nu(q') < \nu(q)$ .

As in Definition 11.3 of Part I, we introduce a partial order on  $\text{RP}_+(\sigma)$  corresponding to the flow-out under  $W$ .

**Definition 8.3.** If  $q, q' \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$  we say that  $q \leq q'$  if  $q' \in \Phi_+(\{q\})$  and  $q < q'$  if  $q \leq q'$  but  $q' \neq q$ . A subset  $\Gamma \subset \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$  is closed under  $\leq$  if, for all  $q \in \Gamma$ ,  $\{q' \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma); q \leq q'\} \subset \Gamma$ . We call the set  $\{q' \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma); q \leq q'\}$  the string generated by  $q$ .

**Remark 8.4.** This partial order relation between two radial points in  $\text{RP}_+(\sigma)$  corresponds to the existence of a sequence  $q_j \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$ ,  $j = 0, \dots, k$ ,  $k \geq 1$ , with  $q_0 = q$ ,  $q_k = q'$  and such that for every  $j = 0, \dots, k - 1$ , there is a bicharacteristic  $\gamma_j$  with  $\lim_{t \rightarrow -\infty} \gamma_j = q_j$  and  $\lim_{t \rightarrow +\infty} \gamma_j = q_{j+1}$ .

**Lemma 8.5.** Given  $\sigma > \min V_0$  and  $\tilde{\nu} > 0$ , set  $K = V_0^{-1}((-\infty, \sigma - \tilde{\nu}^2]) \subset \partial X$  then there exists a potential function  $\tilde{V} \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(X)$  with  $\tilde{V}_0$  Morse such that

- (i)  $\tilde{V}_0 \geq V_0$ ,
- (ii)  $\tilde{V}_0 = V_0$  on a neighbourhood of  $K$ ,
- (iii) no critical value of  $\tilde{V}$  lies in the interval  $(\sigma - \tilde{\nu}^2, \sigma]$ ,
- (iv) if  $\tilde{\Sigma}(\sigma)$  is the characteristic variety at energy  $\sigma$  of  $\tilde{H} = \Delta + \tilde{V}$  then

$$\Sigma(\sigma) \cap \{v \geq \tilde{\nu}\} = \tilde{\Sigma}(\sigma) \cap \{v \geq \tilde{\nu}\},$$

- (v)  $\tilde{H} - \sigma$  has no  $L^2$  null space.

*Proof.* Choose a smooth function  $f$  on the real line so that  $f' > 0$ ,  $f(t) = t$  if  $t \leq \sigma - \tilde{\nu}^2$  and  $f(t) > \sigma$  for  $t \geq \min\{V(q); dV(q) = 0 \text{ and } V(q) > \sigma - \tilde{\nu}^2\} > \sigma - \tilde{\nu}^2$ . Then let  $\tilde{V} = f \circ V$ , so the critical points of  $V_0$  and  $\tilde{V}_0$  are the same and are nondegenerate.

On  $\Sigma(\sigma) \cap \{v \geq \tilde{\nu}\}$ , we have  $\nu^2 + |\mu|_y^2 + V_0 = \sigma$ , hence  $V_0 \leq \sigma - \tilde{\nu}^2$ , so  $V_0 = \tilde{V}_0$ , and therefore  $\Sigma(\sigma) \cap \{v \geq \tilde{\nu}\} \subset \tilde{\Sigma}(\sigma)$ . With the converse direction proved similarly, (i)–(iv) follow. Property (v) can be arranged by a suitable perturbation of  $\tilde{V}$  with compact support in the interior.  $\square$

These properties of  $\tilde{H}$  are exploited in the proof of the following continuation result.

**Lemma 8.6** (Lemma 5.5 of [Hassell et al. 2004]). Suppose  $u \in \mathcal{C}^{-\infty}(X)$  satisfies

$$\text{WF}_{sc}(u) \subset \{v \geq \nu_1\} \text{ and } \text{WF}_{sc}((H - \sigma)u) \subset \{v \geq \nu_2\},$$

for some  $0 < \nu_1 < \nu_2$ , then there exists  $\tilde{u} \in \mathcal{C}^{-\infty}(X)$  with  $\text{WF}_{sc}(u - \tilde{u}) \subset \{v \geq \nu_2\}$  and  $(H - \sigma)\tilde{u} \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$ .

*Proof.* We just sketch the proof here; for full details, see [Hassell et al. 2004]. The obvious idea of subtracting  $R(\sigma + i0)((H - \sigma)u)$  from  $u$  does not quite work, since the forward flowout of other critical points  $q' \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$  with  $\nu(q')$  less than  $\nu(q)$  may strike  $q$ . To avoid this problem, choose  $\tilde{\nu}$  with  $\nu_1 < \tilde{\nu} < \nu_2$ , sufficiently close to  $\nu_2$  so that there are no radial points  $q$  with  $\nu(q) \in [\tilde{\nu}, \nu_2)$ , and a corresponding  $\tilde{V}$  as in Lemma 8.5. Then consider the function  $\tilde{R}(\sigma + i0)(H - \sigma)Au$ , where  $A$  is equal to the identity microlocally on  $\{v \leq \tilde{\nu}\} \cap \Sigma(\sigma)$  and vanishes microlocally in  $\{v \geq \nu_2\}$ . Since  $\tilde{V}_0$  has no critical points  $q$  with  $0 < \nu(q) < \nu_2$  it follows readily  $\tilde{u} = Au - \tilde{R}(\sigma + i0)(H - \sigma)Au$  satisfies the desired conditions.  $\square$

From this we can readily deduce:

**Lemma 8.7.** *If  $q \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$  then every element of  $E_{\text{mic},+}(q, \sigma)$  has a representative  $\tilde{u}$  such that  $(H - \sigma)\tilde{u} \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$  and  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(\tilde{u})$  is contained in the union of  $\Phi_+(\{q\})$  and the  $\Phi_+(\{q'\})$  for those  $q' \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$  with  $\nu(q') > \nu(q)$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $O$  be a  $W$ -balanced neighbourhood of  $q$  (see Definition 4.4). Let  $A \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(X)$  be microlocally equal to the identity on  $\Phi_+(\{q\}) \cap \bar{O}$  and supported in a small neighbourhood of  $\Phi_+(\{q\}) \cap \bar{O}$ . Then there exists  $\nu_2 > \nu(q)$  such that  $\nu > \nu_2$  on  $\Phi_+(\{q\}) \setminus O$ , and  $\text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(A) \setminus O \subset \{\nu \geq \nu_2\}$ . (Here  $\text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(A)$  is the operator wavefront set of  $A$ , that is, the complement in  ${}^{\text{sc}}T_{\partial X}^*X$  of the set where  $A$  is microlocally trivial; see [Melrose 1994].) Now let  $u$  be any representative. Since  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u) \cap O \subset \Phi_+(\{q\})$ ,  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(Au - u) \cap O = \emptyset$ . In addition,  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(Au) \subset \text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(A) \cap \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(u)$ , hence  $\nu \geq \nu(q)$  on  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(Au)$ . Moreover,  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(Au - u) \cap O = \emptyset$  implies that

$$\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}((H - \sigma)Au) \cap O = \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}((H - \sigma)Au - (H - \sigma)u) \cap O = \emptyset,$$

so  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}((H - \sigma)Au) \subset \text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(A) \setminus O$ , hence is contained in  $\{\nu \geq \nu_2\}$ . Then, by Lemma 8.6, there exists  $\tilde{u} \in C^{-\infty}(X)$  such that  $\nu \geq \nu_2$  on  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(\tilde{u} - Au)$  and  $(H - \sigma)\tilde{u} \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$ . In particular,  $\nu \geq \nu(q)$  in  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(\tilde{u})$ . Moreover,  $\nu \geq \nu_2$  on  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(\tilde{u} - u) \cap O$ , hence by Lemma 4.5,  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(\tilde{u} - u) \cap O = \emptyset$ , so  $\tilde{u}$  and  $u$  have the same image in  $E_{\text{mic},+}(O, \sigma)$ .  $\square$

Finally, we can show that each microlocally outgoing eigenfunction is represented by an approximate eigenfunction.

*Proof of Proposition 8.1.* Let  $\tilde{u}$  be a representative as in Lemma 8.7. If we choose  $q'$  from the set

$$\{q' \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma) \cap \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(\tilde{u}); \nu(q') > \nu(q), q' \notin \Phi_+(\{q\})\}, \tag{8-1}$$

with  $\nu(q')$  minimal, then, localizing  $\tilde{u}$  near  $q'$ , gives an element  $v$  of  $E_{\text{mic},+}(q')$ . By subtracting from  $\tilde{u}$  a representative of  $v$  given by Lemma 8.7, we remove the wavefront set near  $q'$ . Inductively choosing radial points from (8-1) and performing this procedure repeatedly, all wavefront set may be removed from  $\tilde{u}$  except that contained in  $\Phi_+(\{q\})$ .  $\square$

### 9. Microlocal Morse decomposition

Next we show that global smooth eigenfunctions can, in an appropriate sense, be decomposed into components originating, in the sense of the Introduction, at a single radial point. We do this by defining subspaces of  $E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma)$  corresponding to the location of scattering wavefront set in  $\{\nu > 0\}$  and showing that suitable quotients of these spaces are isomorphic to the spaces of microlocal eigenfunctions  $E_{\text{mic},+}^\infty(q, \sigma)$ ,  $q \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$ , analyzed in Sections 6 and 7. Since each of the spaces  $E_{\text{mic},+}^\infty(q, \sigma)$ ,  $q \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$ , is non-trivial this shows that each such radial point gives rise to eigenfunctions. However, as noted previously in [Herbst and Skibsted 1999; 2004; 2008] and [Hassell et al. 2004] in some special cases, there is a qualitative difference between the radial points corresponding to local minima of  $V_0$  and the others. This is expressed by Proposition 10.3 where we show that the eigenfunctions  $u \in E_{\text{Min},+}^\infty(\sigma)$  originating only at minimum radial points are dense in  $E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)$  (definitions of these spaces are given below).

Recall from [Hassell et al. 2004, Equation (3.14)] the spaces of eigenfunctions of fixed growth

$$E_{\text{ess}}^s(\sigma) = \{u \in E_{\text{ess}}^{-\infty}(\sigma); \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}^{0,s-1/2}(u) \cap \{\nu = 0\} = \emptyset\}. \tag{9-1}$$

This condition is equivalent to requiring that

$$Bu \in x^{s-1/2}L^2(X) \tag{9-2}$$

for some pseudodifferential operator  $B \in \Psi_{sc}^{0,0}(X)$  with boundary symbol which is elliptic on  $\Sigma(\sigma) \cap \{\nu = 0\}$  and microsupported in  $\{|\nu| < a(\sigma)\}$ , where

$$a(\sigma) = \min\{|\nu(q)|; q \in \text{RP}(\sigma)\}.$$

The space  $E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)$  is of particular interest. Choose an operator  $A \in \Psi_{sc}^{0,0}(X)$  whose boundary symbol is 0 for  $\nu \leq -a(\sigma)$  and 1 for  $\nu \geq a(\sigma)$ . The space  $E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)$  is a Hilbert space with norm

$$\|u\|_{E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)}^2 = \langle i[H, A]u, u \rangle. \tag{9-3}$$

The positive-definiteness of this form, and its independence of the choice of operator  $A$ , was shown in [Hassell et al. 2004, Section 12]. An equivalent norm is

$$\|Bu\|_{x^{-1/2}L^2} + \|u\|_{x^{-1/2-\epsilon}L^2}$$

where  $\epsilon > 0$  and  $B$  is as in (9-2); see [Hassell et al. 2004, Section 3].

We now define subspaces of  $E_{\text{ess}}^s(\sigma)$  depending on the location of the scattering wavefront set inside  $\{\nu > 0\}$ . Given any  $\leq$ -closed subset  $\Gamma$  of  $\text{RP}_+(\sigma)$ , we define

$$E_{\text{ess}}^s(\sigma, \Gamma) = \{u \in E_{\text{ess}}^s(\sigma); \text{WF}_{sc}(u) \cap \text{RP}_+(\sigma) \subset \Gamma\}. \tag{9-4}$$

The set of radial points  $q \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$  lying above local minima of  $V$  is an example of a  $\leq$ -closed subspace and will be denoted  $\text{Min}_+(\sigma)$ . In this case we use the notation

$$E_{\text{Min}_+}^s(\sigma) \equiv E_{\text{ess}}^s(\sigma, \text{Min}_+(\sigma)) = \{u \in E_{\text{ess}}^s(\sigma); \text{WF}_{sc}(u) \cap \text{RP}_+(\sigma) \subset \text{Min}_+(\sigma)\}$$

to be consistent with [Hassell et al. 2004].

**Proposition 9.1.** *Suppose that  $\Gamma \subset \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$  is  $\leq$ -closed and  $q$  is a  $\leq$ -minimal element of  $\Gamma$ . Then with  $\Gamma' = \Gamma \setminus \{q\}$ ,*

$$0 \longrightarrow E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma') \xrightarrow{\iota} E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma) \xrightarrow{r_q} E_{\text{mic}_+,+}(\sigma, q) \longrightarrow 0$$

*is a short exact sequence, where  $\iota$  is the inclusion map and  $r_q$  is the microlocal restriction map.*

*Proof.* The injectivity of  $\iota$  follows from the definitions. The null space of the microlocal restriction map  $r_q$ , which can be viewed as restriction to a  $W$ -balanced neighbourhood of  $q$ , is precisely the subset of  $E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma)$  with wave front set disjoint from  $\{q\}$ , and this subset is  $E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma')$ . Thus it only remains to check the surjectivity of  $r_q$ .

We do so first for the strings generated by  $q \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$ . For  $q \in \text{Min}_+(\sigma)$ , the string just consists of  $q$  itself and the result follows trivially. So consider the string  $S(q)$  generated by  $q \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma) \setminus \text{Min}_+(\sigma)$ . By Proposition 8.1 any element of  $E_{\text{mic}_+,+}(q, \sigma)$  has a representative  $\tilde{u}$  satisfying  $(H - \sigma)\tilde{u} \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$  with  $\text{WF}_{sc}(\tilde{u}) \subset \Phi_+(\{q\})$ . Then  $u = \tilde{u} - R(\sigma - i0)(H - \sigma)\tilde{u} \in E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma)$ , which gives surjectivity in this case.

For any  $\leq$ -closed set  $\Gamma$  and  $\leq$ -minimal element  $q$ , the string  $S(q)$  is contained in  $\Gamma$ , so the surjectivity of  $r_q$  follows in general. □



Notice that we can always find a sequence  $\emptyset = \Gamma_0 \subset \Gamma_1 \subset \dots \subset \Gamma_n = \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$ , of  $\leq$ -closed sets with  $\Gamma_j \setminus \Gamma_{j-1}$  consisting of a single point  $q_j$  which is  $\leq$ -minimal in  $\Gamma_j$ : we simply order the  $q_i \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$  so that  $\nu(q_1) \geq \nu(q_2) \geq \dots$ , and set  $\Gamma_i = \{q_1, \dots, q_i\}$ . Then Proposition 9.1 implies the following:

**Theorem 9.2** (Microlocal Morse decomposition). *Suppose that  $\emptyset = \Gamma_0 \subset \Gamma_1 \subset \dots \subset \Gamma_n = \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$ , is as described in the previous paragraph. Then*

$$\{0\} \longrightarrow E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma_1) \hookrightarrow \dots \hookrightarrow E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma_{n-1}) \hookrightarrow E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma),$$

with

$$E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma_j) / E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma_{j-1}) \simeq E_{\text{mic},+}(q_j, \sigma), \quad j = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

### 10. $L^2$ -parameterization of the generalized eigenspaces

Recall from Theorem 6.7, or Theorem 7.3 in the effectively resonant case, that there is a surjective map

$$M_+(\sigma) : E_{\text{Min},+}^\infty(\sigma) \rightarrow \bigoplus_{q \in \text{Min}_+(\sigma)} \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{n-1}), \quad \sigma \in (\min V_0, \infty) \setminus \left( \text{Cv}(V) \cup \bigcup_{z \in \text{Cv}(V)} \mathcal{R}_{\text{ht},z} \right), \quad (10-1)$$

given by taking  $u \in E_{\text{Min},+}^\infty(\sigma)$ , microlocally restricting  $u$  to a neighbourhood of each  $q$  giving  $u_q \in E_{\text{mic},+}^\infty(\sigma, q)$  and sending  $u$  to the sum of the leading coefficients  $\sum_k w_k(Y'')v_k(Y''')$ ,  $(Y'', Y''') \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1}$ , of each of the  $u_q$ . Since the  $v_k$  are normalized eigenfunctions of a harmonic oscillator and the  $w_k$  are Schwartz functions of  $Y''$  with seminorms rapidly decreasing in  $k$ , the sum is a Schwartz function of  $(Y'', Y''')$ .

Let us regard  $\bigoplus_q \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{n-1})$  as a subspace of  $\bigoplus_q L^2(\mathbb{R}^{n-1})$ , endowed with the norm

$$\|(w_q)_{q \in \text{Min}_+(\sigma)}\|^2 = \sum_q \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n-1}} |w_q(Y)|^2 d\omega_{q,\sigma}, \quad d\omega_{q,\sigma} = 2\sqrt{\sigma - V(\pi(q))} d\omega_q, \quad (10-2)$$

where  $\omega_q$  is the measure induced by Riemannian measure, namely the measure

$$x^{n-(n-m)/2 - \sum_j r_j''} dg$$

divided by  $dx/x$  and restricted to  $x = 0$ . (It takes the form  $dY'' dY'''$  provided that the  $y$  are normal coordinates, centred at the critical point, for the metric  $h(0, y, dy)$ .)

The next result is the main content of this section.

**Theorem 10.1.** *The map  $M_+(\sigma)$  in (10-1) has a unique extension to an unitary isomorphism*

$$M_+(\sigma) : E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma) \rightarrow \bigoplus_{q \in \text{Min}_+(\sigma)} L^2(\mathbb{R}^{n-1}).$$

**Remark 10.2.** Here, and throughout this section, we take  $\sigma \in (\min V_0, \infty) \setminus \text{Cv}(V)$ .

To prove the theorem, we establish several intermediate results. First we show:

**Proposition 10.3.** *The space  $E_{\text{Min},+}^\infty(\sigma)$  is dense in  $E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma)$  in the topology of  $E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)$ .*

*Proof.* The proof is by induction. We consider a sequence  $\Gamma_0 \subset \Gamma_1 \subset \dots \subset \Gamma_n = \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$  as in the previous section, but with the additional condition that the radial points are ordered so that, among the points with equal values of  $\nu$ , those corresponding to local minima of  $V_0$  are placed last. We shall prove by induction that

$$E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma_i \cap \text{Min}_+(\sigma)) \text{ is dense in } E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma_i) \text{ in the topology of } E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma). \tag{10-3}$$

For  $i = 1$  there is nothing to prove. Assume that (10-3) is true for  $i = k$ . Let  $\Gamma_{k+1} \setminus \Gamma_k = \{q\}$ . If  $q$  arises from a local minimum of  $V_0$ , then using a microlocal decomposition, any  $u \in E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma_{k+1})$  can be written as the sum of  $u_1 \in E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \{q\})$  and  $u_2 \in E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma_k)$ . A similar statement is true for  $u \in E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma_{k+1} \cap \text{Min}_+(\sigma))$ , which proves (10-3) for  $i = k + 1$ .

Next suppose that  $q$  does not arise from a local minimum of  $V_0$ . Then we adapt the argument of Proposition 11.6 of [Hassell et al. 2004] to prove (10-3) for  $i = k + 1$ . We first make the assumption that  $\sigma$  is not in the point spectrum of  $H$ . Using our inductive assumption, it is enough to show that  $E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma_k)$  is dense in  $E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma_{k+1})$ . Let  $u \in E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma_{k+1})$ . Let  $Q \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{0,0}(X)$  be microlocally equal to the identity near  $\Gamma_k \cap \text{Min}_+(\sigma)$ , and microsupported sufficiently close to  $\Gamma_k \cap \text{Min}_+(\sigma)$ . Then away from  $\text{Min}_+(\sigma)$ ,  $u \in x^{-1/2+\epsilon}L^2$  by (ii) of Theorem 6.7 and thus  $(H - \sigma)Qu = [H, Q]u \in x^{1/2+\epsilon}L^2$  for some  $\epsilon > 0$ . This is also true near  $\text{Min}_+(\sigma)$  since  $Q$  is microlocally the identity there, so we have  $(H - \sigma)Qu \in x^{1/2+\epsilon}L^2$  everywhere. This implies that

$$u = Qu - R(\sigma - i0)(H - \sigma)Qu, \tag{10-4}$$

since  $v = u - (Qu - R(\sigma - i0)(H - \sigma)Qu)$  satisfies  $(H - \sigma)v = 0$  and  $v \in x^{-1/2+\epsilon}L^2$  microlocally for  $\nu > 0$ .

Now choose a modified potential function  $\tilde{V}$  as in Lemma 8.5, where we choose  $\tilde{\nu}$  larger than  $\nu(q)$  but smaller than  $\nu(q')$  for every  $q' \in \Gamma_k \cap \text{Min}_+(\sigma)$ . (This is possible because of the way we ordered the  $q_i$ .) Since  $\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(Qu)$  lies in  $\{\nu > \tilde{\nu}\}$ , we have

$$Qu = \tilde{R}(\sigma + i0)(\tilde{H} - \sigma)Qu. \tag{10-5}$$

Now take  $u'_j = \phi(x/r_j)u$ , where  $\phi \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ ,  $\phi(t) = 1$  for  $t \geq 2$ ,  $\phi(t) = 0$  for  $t \leq 1$  and  $r_j \rightarrow 0$  as  $j \rightarrow \infty$ . Then  $u'_j \in \dot{C}^\infty(X)$ , and  $w_j$  defined by

$$w_j = \tilde{R}(\sigma + i0)(\tilde{H} - \sigma)Qu'_j$$

converge to  $Qu$  in  $x^{-1/2-\epsilon}L^2$ . Our choice of  $\tilde{V}$  ensures that

$$\text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(w_j) \cap \text{RP}_+(\sigma) \subset \Gamma_k.$$

Moreover,

$$(H - \sigma)w_j \text{ converges to } (H - \sigma)Qu \text{ in } x^{1/2+\epsilon}L^2. \tag{10-6}$$

Now define

$$u_j = w_j - R(\sigma - i0)(H - \sigma)w_j.$$

Then  $u_j \in E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma, \Gamma_k)$ . We claim that  $u_j \rightarrow u$  in the topology of  $E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)$ . Certainly,  $u_j \rightarrow u$  in  $x^{-1/2-\epsilon}L^2$ . We must also show that  $Bu_j \rightarrow Bu$  in  $x^{-1/2}L^2$ , where  $B$  is as in (9–2). To do this we write

$$\begin{aligned} Bu_j - Bu &= B(w_j - R(\sigma - i0)(H - \sigma)w_j) - B((\text{Id} - Q)u + Qu) \\ &= B(\tilde{R}(\sigma + i0)(\tilde{H} - \sigma)Qu'_j - R(\sigma - i0)(H - \sigma)w_j \\ &\quad + R(\sigma - i0)(H - \sigma)Qu - \tilde{R}(\sigma + i0)(\tilde{H} - \sigma)Qu), \end{aligned}$$

using (10–4) and (10–5), and this goes to zero in  $x^{-1/2}L^2$  by (10–6) and propagation of singularities, Theorem 3.1 of [Hassell et al. 2004], as in the proof of [Hassell et al. 2004, Proposition 11.6].

If  $\sigma$  is in the point spectrum of  $H$ , then Equation (10–4) must be replaced by

$$u = \Pi(Qu - R(\sigma - i0)(H - \sigma)Qu),$$

where  $\Pi$  is projection off the  $L^2$   $\sigma$ -eigenspace. Consequently we must define  $w_j$  by  $\Pi\tilde{R}(\sigma + i0)(\tilde{H} - \sigma)Qu'_j$ , and then the rest of the proof goes through.  $\square$

The second intermediate result we need is:

**Proposition 10.4.** *The Hilbert norm (9–3) on the subspace  $E_{\text{Min},+}^\infty(\sigma) \subset E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)$  is given by the formula*

$$\|u\|_{E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)}^2 = \sum_{q \in \text{Min}_+(\sigma)} 2\sqrt{\sigma - V(\pi(q))} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n-1}} |M^+(q, \sigma)u|^2 d\omega_q. \tag{10-7}$$

*Proof.* The proof is the same as the one dimensional case, which is proved in Proposition 12.6 of [Hassell et al. 2004], so we just give a sketch here.

Let  $\phi$  be as in the proof of Proposition 10.3. Then we can write the natural norm (9–3) on  $E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)$  as a limit

$$\lim_{r \rightarrow 0} i \langle (H - \sigma)Au, \phi(x/r)u \rangle = \lim_{r \rightarrow 0} i \langle Au, [H, \phi(x/r)]u \rangle.$$

Since  $u \in x^{-1/2-\epsilon}L^2$ , the only term in  $[H, \phi(x/r)]$  contributing in the limit is  $2(x^2D_x)\phi(x/r)(x^2D_x)$ . The cutoff operator  $A$  restricts attention to  $\{v > 0\}$ , and the limit vanishes when localized to any region where  $u \in x^{-1/2+\epsilon}L^2$ , so we can substitute for  $u$  a sum of expressions  $u_q$  as in (6–18) in the effectively nonresonant case, or its analogue in the effectively resonant setting arising from (7–2) (namely  $e^{i\Phi(y)/x}$  times an expression as in (7–2); see Remark 6.8), one for each  $q \in \text{Min}_+(\sigma)$ . A straightforward computation then gives (10–7).  $\square$

*Proof of Theorem 10.1.* Proposition 10.4 shows that  $M_+(\sigma)$  maps  $E_{\text{Min},+}^\infty(\sigma)$  into a dense subspace of  $\bigoplus_q L^2(\mathbb{R}^{n-1})$ , with the Hilbert norm of  $M_+(\sigma)u$ ,  $u \in E_{\text{Min},+}^\infty(\sigma)$ , equal to that of  $u$ . By Proposition 10.3,  $E_{\text{Min},+}^\infty(\sigma)$  is dense in  $E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma)$ , and by Corollary 3.13 of [Hassell et al. 2004],  $E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma)$  is dense in  $E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)$ . The result follows.  $\square$

So far we have only considered the microlocal restriction of eigenfunctions near radial points  $q$  satisfying  $\nu(q) > 0$ . For each critical point of  $V_0$ , there are two corresponding radial points with opposite signs of  $\nu$ , and we can equally well consider microlocal restriction near radial points with  $\nu(q) < 0$ . This leads to an operator

$$M_-(\sigma) : E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma) \rightarrow \bigoplus_{q \in \text{Min}_-(\sigma)} L^2(\mathbb{R}^{n-1})$$

and the analogue of Theorem 10.1 holds also for  $M_-(\sigma)$ .

**Definition 10.5.** The inverses of  $M_{\pm}(\sigma), P_{\pm}(\sigma) : \bigoplus_{q \in \text{Min}_{\pm}(\sigma)} L^2(\mathbb{R}^{n-1}) \rightarrow E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)$  of  $M_{\pm}(\sigma)$  are called the *Poisson operators at energy  $\sigma$* .

We can identify  $\bigoplus_{q \in \text{Min}_+(\sigma)} L^2(\mathbb{R}^{n-1})$  and  $\bigoplus_{q \in \text{Min}_-(\sigma)} L^2(\mathbb{R}^{n-1})$  in the obvious way, and may therefore assume that the  $M_{\pm}(\sigma)$  have the same range, identified with the domain of  $P_{\pm}(\sigma)$ .

**Corollary 10.6.** For  $\sigma \notin \text{Cv}(V)$ , the  $S$ -matrix may be identified as the unitary operator

$$S(\sigma) = M_+(\sigma)P_-(\sigma)$$

on  $\bigoplus_{z \in \text{Min}} L^2(\mathbb{R}^{n-1})$ .

**Remark 10.7.** For  $n = 2$ , the structure of  $S(\sigma)$  was described rather precisely in [Hassell et al. 2001] as an anisotropic Fourier integral operator.

Theorem 10.1 is essentially a pointwise version of asymptotic completeness in  $\sigma$ . Integrating gives a version of the usual statement, but some uniformity in  $\sigma$  is required for this. So we proceed to discuss an extension of part (i) of Theorem 6.7 that is valid in an interval rather than just at one value. For this purpose, let  $I \subset (\min V_0, \infty)$  be a compact interval disjoint from the set of effectively resonant energies, the set of Hessian thresholds and  $\text{Cv}(V)$ . Then for each  $\sigma \in I$ , the sets  $\text{Min}_+(\sigma) \subset \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$  can be identified; we write  $\text{Min}_+(I)$  for this set. Each element of  $\text{Min}_+(I)$  is thus a continuous family  $q(\sigma)$  of minimal radial points, with  $q(\sigma) \in \text{Min}_+(\sigma)$ .

**Proposition 10.8.** Let  $I \subset (\min V_0, \infty)$  be as above, and let the  $q(\sigma) \in \text{Min}_+(I)$  be an outgoing radial point associated to a minimum point  $z$  of  $V_0$ , with  $Y'', Y'''$  the associated coordinates given by (5–18). For any  $h(\sigma, \cdot) \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(I; \mathcal{S}(\overline{\mathbb{R}^{n-1}}))$  there is  $\phi \in \mathring{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$  orthogonal to  $E_{\text{pp}}(I)$  such that for every  $\sigma \in I$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} F(\sigma)^{-1}R(\sigma + i0)\phi &= \sum_j x^{-i\tilde{b}-i\kappa_j} w_j(Y'', \sigma)v_j(Y''', \sigma) + u', \\ h(\sigma, Y'', Y''') &= \sum_j w_j(Y'', \sigma)v_j(Y''', \sigma), \end{aligned} \tag{10-8}$$

where  $w_j, v_j, \kappa_j$  and  $\tilde{b}$  are as in Proposition 6.3, where  $u' \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(I; I_{\text{sc}}^{(l)}(X, \mathcal{M}))$  for some  $l > -\frac{1}{2}$ , and  $F(\sigma)$  is as in Theorem 3.17.

**Remark 10.9.** The statement  $u' \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(I; I_{\text{sc}}^{(l)}(X, \mathcal{M}))$  is meant to underline that this is a global claim, namely  $u' \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(I; I_{\text{sc}}^{(l)}(O, \mathcal{M}))$  and that this is  $\mathcal{C}^\infty$  with values in  $\mathring{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$  microlocally away from  $\{q(\sigma); \sigma \in I\}$ , that is, for all  $A \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}(X)$  with  $\text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(A) \cap \{q(\sigma); \sigma \in I\} = \emptyset$ ,  $Au' \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(I; \mathring{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X))$ .

*Proof.* By the construction of Section 6, for each  $\sigma \in I$  there is an approximate microlocally outgoing solution  $u_\sigma$  with  $f_\sigma = (H - \sigma)u_\sigma \in \mathring{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$  and  $F(\sigma)^{-1}u_\sigma$  of the same form as the right hand side of (10–8). Indeed, the construction is smooth in  $\sigma$ , in the sense that  $(d/d\sigma)^k u \in I^s(O, \mathcal{M})$  for each  $k$  and each  $s < -1/2$ , so that with  $f(\sigma, \cdot) = f_\sigma(\cdot)$ , we have  $f \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(I; \mathring{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X))$ . Notice that there is no need to “globalize” using Proposition 8.1, since microlocally outgoing solutions over sources/sinks (that is, minima of  $V_0$ ) are localized at  $q(\sigma)$ .

Let  $\tilde{f} \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}_c^\infty(\mathbb{C} \times X)$  be an almost analytic extension of  $f$  with compact support, so  $\bar{\partial}_\sigma f$  vanishes to infinite order at  $\mathbb{R} \times X$ , and let

$$\phi = \frac{-1}{2\pi i} \int_{\mathbb{C}} R(\sigma) \bar{\partial}_\sigma \tilde{f} \, d\sigma \wedge d\bar{\sigma}.$$

Thus,  $\phi \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$  since  $\bar{\partial}_\sigma \tilde{f}$  vanishes to infinite order on the real axis.

We also claim that (10–8) holds. Indeed, let  $\sigma_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $\chi \in \mathcal{C}_c^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ ,  $\chi$  identically 1 near  $\sigma_0$ , let  $\tilde{\chi}$  be an almost analytic extension of  $\chi$  of compact support. Thus,

$$f(\sigma, \cdot) = f(\sigma_0, \cdot)\chi(\sigma) + (\sigma - \sigma_0)g(\sigma, \cdot), \quad \tilde{f}(\sigma, \cdot) = f(\sigma_0, \cdot)\tilde{\chi}(\sigma) + (\sigma - \sigma_0)\tilde{g}(\sigma, \cdot)$$

with  $g \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}_c^\infty(\mathbb{R} \times X)$ ,  $\tilde{g} \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}_c^\infty(\mathbb{C} \times X)$ . Then, writing  $\sigma - \sigma_0 = (H - \sigma_0) - (H - \sigma)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \phi &= \frac{-1}{2\pi i} \left( \int_{\mathbb{C}} R(\sigma) \bar{\partial}_\sigma \tilde{\chi} \, d\sigma \wedge d\bar{\sigma} \right) f(\sigma_0, \cdot) \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2\pi i} (H - \sigma_0) \int_{\mathbb{C}} R(\sigma) \bar{\partial}_\sigma \tilde{g} \, d\sigma \wedge d\bar{\sigma} + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\mathbb{C}} \bar{\partial}_\sigma \tilde{g} \, d\sigma \wedge d\bar{\sigma}, \end{aligned}$$

where in the last term the identity  $(H - \sigma)R(\sigma) = \text{Id}$  is used. Since the last term vanishes (as  $\tilde{g}$  is smooth), and the integral in the second term is in  $\dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$ , while the integral in the first term is  $\chi(H)$ , we deduce that

$$\phi = f_{\sigma_0} + (H - \sigma_0)f'_{\sigma_0} = (H - \sigma_0)(u_{\sigma_0} + f'_{\sigma_0})$$

for some  $f' \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(I \times X)$ . Then if  $v \in E_{\text{pp}}(I)$ ,  $(H - \sigma_0)v = 0$ , we have  $v \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$ , so  $\langle \phi, v \rangle = \langle u_{\sigma_0} + f'_{\sigma_0}, (H - \sigma_0)v \rangle = 0$ . Also  $R(\sigma_0 + i0)\phi - R(\sigma_0 + i0)f_{\sigma_0} = f'_{\sigma_0} \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$ , so  $R(\sigma_0 + i0)\phi$  and  $R(\sigma_0 + i0)f_{\sigma_0}$  indeed have the same asymptotics. In particular, (10–8) holds for every  $\sigma_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ .  $\square$

Now we state asymptotic completeness in a more standard form.

**Theorem 10.10** (Asymptotic completeness). *Let  $I \subset (\min V_0, \infty)$  be a compact interval as above. Then*

$$M_+(\cdot) \circ \text{Sp}(\cdot) : \text{Ran}(\Pi_I) \ominus E_{\text{pp}}(I) \rightarrow \bigoplus_{q \in \text{Min}_+(I)} L^2(I \times \mathbb{R}_q^{n-1}; 2\pi \, d\sigma \, d\omega_{q,\sigma})$$

is unitary. Here, as before,  $d\omega_{q,\sigma} = 2\sqrt{\sigma - V(\pi(q))} \, d\omega_q$ .

*Proof.* For  $f \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$  orthogonal to  $E_{\text{pp}}(I)$ , let

$$u = u(\sigma) = (2\pi i)^{-1} (R(\sigma + i0)f - R(\sigma - i0)f) = \text{Sp}(\sigma)f, \quad \text{Sp}(\sigma) = (2\pi i)^{-1} (R(\sigma + i0) - R(\sigma - i0))$$

is the spectral measure. The norm of  $u$  in  $E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)$  is given by  $\langle i(H - \sigma)Au, u \rangle$ , where  $A$  is as in (9–3). Notice that

$$\begin{aligned} 2\pi i(H - \sigma)Au - f &= (H - \sigma)A(R(\sigma + i0) - R(\sigma - i0))f - (H - \sigma)R(\sigma + i0)f \\ &= (H - \sigma) \left( (A - \text{Id})R(\sigma + i0)f - AR(\sigma - i0)f \right) = (H - \sigma)v, \quad v \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X), \end{aligned}$$

since

$$\text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(A) \cap \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(R(\sigma - i0)f) = \emptyset \text{ and } \text{WF}'_{\text{sc}}(A - \text{Id}) \cap \text{WF}_{\text{sc}}(R(\sigma + i0)f) = \emptyset.$$

Hence

$$2\pi \|u\|_{E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)}^2 = 2\pi i \langle (H - \sigma)Au, u \rangle = \langle f + (H - \sigma)v, u \rangle = \langle f, \text{Sp}(\sigma)f \rangle.$$

The right hand side is continuous, hence so is the left hand side.

Integrating over  $\sigma$  in  $I$ , denoting the spectral projection of  $H$  to  $I$  by  $\Pi_I$ , and using Proposition 10.4, we deduce that  $M_+(\sigma) \text{Sp}(\sigma) f$  is continuous with values in  $L^2$  and

$$\|\Pi_I f\|^2 = 2\pi \int_I \|M_+(\sigma) \text{Sp}(\sigma) f\|^2 d\sigma,$$

so  $M_+(\cdot) \circ \text{Sp}(\cdot)$  is an isometry on the orthocomplement of the finite dimensional space  $E_{\text{pp}}(I)$  in the range of  $\Pi_I$ .

It remains to prove that the range is dense in  $\bigoplus_{q \in \text{Min}} L^2(I \times \mathbb{R}^{n-1})$ . It suffices to show that if  $h \in \bigoplus_{q \in \text{Min}} \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(I \times \mathbb{R}^{n-1})$ , then there is a  $f \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X)$  with  $M_+(\sigma) \text{Sp}(\sigma) f = h(\sigma, \cdot)$ . But this was proved in Proposition 10.8, so the proof of the theorem is complete.  $\square$

**Remark 10.11.** The results of this section can be related more closely with Theorem 9.2 by considering the closure of  $E_{\text{Min},+}^\infty(\sigma)$  as a subset of  $E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma)$  in the topology of  $E_{\text{ess}}^s(\sigma)$  for varying values of  $s$ . We have seen in Proposition 10.3 that  $E_{\text{Min},+}^\infty(\sigma)$  is dense, in the topology of  $E_{\text{ess}}^0(\sigma)$ . In fact the proof of Proposition 10.3 shows that this is true in the topology of  $E_{\text{ess}}^s(\sigma)$  for  $0 \leq s < s_0$ , where  $s_0$  is the smallest number such that every  $u \in E_{\text{mic}}^\infty(q)$ , for every  $q \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma) \setminus \text{Min}_+(\sigma)$ , is in  $x^{-1/2+s_0} L^2$  locally near  $\pi(q)$ ; that  $s_0$  is strictly positive follows from (ii) of Theorem 6.7. By contrast,  $E_{\text{Min},+}^\infty(\sigma)$  is closed in the  $E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma)$  topology. What happens as  $s$  increases is that the closure of  $E_{\text{Min},+}^\infty(\sigma)$  in the  $E_{\text{ess}}^s(\sigma)$  topology changes discretely, as  $s$  crosses certain values determined by the structure of eigenfunctions at the nonminimal critical points.

One way to understand this is in terms of microlocally *incoming* eigenfunctions at the outgoing radial points, that is, microlocal eigenfunctions  $u$  with scattering wavefront set near  $q$  is contained in  $\Phi_-(q)$  as opposed to  $\Phi_+(q)$ . In Part I we showed (in all dimensions) that there are nondegenerate pairings

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{mic},+}(q, \sigma) \times E_{\text{mic},-}(q, \sigma) &\rightarrow \mathbb{C}, \\ E_{\text{ess}}^s(\sigma) \times E_{\text{ess}}^{-s}(\sigma) &\rightarrow \mathbb{C} \end{aligned}$$

(Lemma 12.2 and Proposition 12.3 of [Hassell et al. 2004]). The closure of  $E_{\text{Min},+}^\infty(\sigma)$ , in the topology of  $E_{\text{ess}}^s(\sigma)$ , may be identified with the annihilator, in  $E_{\text{ess}}^\infty(\sigma)$ , of the eigenfunctions which are in  $E_{\text{ess}}^{-s}(\sigma)$  and have scattering wavefront set contained in

$$\bigcup_{q \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma) \setminus \text{Min}_+(\sigma)} \Phi_-(q) \cup \{v < 0\}.$$

This set is trivial for  $s < s_0$ , and nontrivial for  $s > s_0$ . The fact that this set of eigenfunctions jumps discretely with  $s$  is shown in the two dimensional case in Section 10 of Part I.

### 11. Time-dependent Schrödinger equation

**11.1. Long-time asymptotics.** In this final section we apply the earlier results to deduce the long-time asymptotics for solutions of the initial value problem

$$(D_t + H)u = 0, \quad u|_{t=0} = u_0, \quad u_0 \in \dot{\mathcal{C}}^\infty(X), \tag{11-1}$$

for a dense set (in  $L^2 \ominus E_{\text{pp}}(H)$ ) of initial data.

Our approach is to use the spectral resolution of  $u_0$  and the functional calculus. In this way, we deduce the long-time asymptotics of  $u$  from the asymptotics of generalized eigenfunctions of  $H$  using the stationary phase lemma.

We first define the space  $X_{\text{Sch}}$  on which the asymptotics of the solution  $u$  of (11–1) will be described. Let us first choose a global boundary defining function  $x$  satisfying (1–1); we can specify, for example, that  $x \equiv 1$  outside a collar neighbourhood of  $\partial X$ . We then introduce the variable  $\tau = tx$ , where  $t$  is time. Let us compactify the real  $\tau$ -line  $\mathbb{R}$  to an interval  $\overline{\mathbb{R}}$  using  $\tau^{-1}$  as a boundary defining function near  $\tau = \infty$ , and  $-\tau^{-1}$  as a boundary defining function near  $\tau = -\infty$ . Then we define

$$X_{\text{Sch}} = X \times \overline{\mathbb{R}}_\tau \tag{11–2}$$

Thus  $X_{\text{Sch}}$  is a compact manifold with corners, with boundary hypersurfaces if (the ‘‘infinity face’’) at  $\tau = \pm\infty$  (or  $t = \pm\infty$ ), naturally diffeomorphic to two copies of  $X$  (one at  $t = +\infty$ , one at  $t = -\infty$ ), and a boundary hypersurface af (the ‘‘asymptotic face’’) diffeomorphic to  $\partial X \times \overline{\mathbb{R}}_\tau$ . At af, every point with  $\tau > 0$  corresponds to  $t = +\infty$  and every point with  $\tau < 0$  corresponds to  $t = -\infty$ , so this is the place to look for long-time (and large-distance) asymptotics of the Schrödinger wave  $u$ . The variable  $\tau$  has an interpretation of inverse speed; a particle travelling asymptotically radially at speed  $\tau_0^{-1}$  will end up at af after infinite time at  $\tau = \tau_0$ .

We now specify a good subset of  $L^2$  initial data  $u_0$ , for which the asymptotics as  $t \rightarrow +\infty$  of the solution,  $u$ , to (11–1) are particularly simple. Let  $I \subset (\min V_0, \infty)$  be a compact interval disjoint from  $\text{Cv}(V)$  and from the set of effectively resonant energies and Hessian thresholds. Let  $(h(\sigma, \cdot))_q \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(I; \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{n-1}))$  be a collection of smooth functions from  $I$  into Schwartz functions of  $n - 1$  variables, one for each  $q \in \text{Min}_+(I)$ , and let  $\phi = \phi(I, h) = \sum_q \phi(I, h_q) \in \dot{C}^\infty(X)$  be the function constructed in Proposition 10.8. Let

$$\mathcal{A}_I = \{\phi(I, h); h(\sigma, \cdot) \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(I; \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^{n-1}))\} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{A} = \sum_I \mathcal{A}_I$$

be the (algebraic) vector space sum of  $\mathcal{A}_I$  over all such  $I$  as above. It is clear from Theorem 10.10 that  $\mathcal{A}_I$  is dense in  $\text{Ran } \Pi_I(H) \ominus E_{\text{pp}}(I)$ , and hence that  $\mathcal{A}$  is dense in  $L^2 \ominus E_{\text{pp}}(H) = H_{\text{ac}}(H)$ . To give the asymptotics of (11–1) with initial data from  $\mathcal{A}$  it suffices to give the asymptotics starting from  $u_0 = \phi(I, h)$  for some  $h$  as above.

**Theorem 11.1.** *Suppose that  $I$  is as above and that  $\phi = \phi(I, h) \in \mathcal{A}_I$ . Let  $u(\cdot, t)$  be the solution of (11–1) with initial data  $u_0 = \phi$ , regarded as a function on  $X_{\text{Sch}}$ . Then  $u$  has trivial asymptotics (that is,  $u$  and all its derivatives are  $O(t^{-\infty})$ ) at if. Also, if  $w \in \partial X$  is not a local minimum of  $V_0$ , and  $\tau > 0$ , then  $u$  has trivial asymptotics in a neighbourhood of  $(w, \tau) \in \text{af}$ .*

*Let  $z$  be a local minimum of  $V_0$ , and let  $(Y'', Y''')$  be the coordinates given by (5–18), where  $\sigma$  is determined in terms of  $\tau$  by (11–4). Then, in a neighbourhood of  $(z, \tau) \in \text{af}$ ,  $u$  takes the form*

$$u(x, Y'', Y''', \tau) = c\tau^{-3/2} \sum_j x^{-i\tilde{b} - i\kappa_j + 1/2} e^{i\Psi(y, \tau)/x} w_j(Y'', \sigma(\tau)) v_j(Y''', \sigma(\tau)) + u', \tag{11–3}$$

where

$$h(\sigma(\tau), Y'', Y''') = \sum_j w_j(Y'', \sigma(\tau)) v_j(Y''', \sigma(\tau)), \quad c = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\pi}} e^{-3i\pi/4}, \quad \sigma(\tau) = V_0(z) + \frac{1}{4\tau^2}, \quad (11-4)$$

$\tilde{b}$  is as in (6-5) and (6-3),  $\kappa_j$  is as in (6-6),  $\Psi$  is a smooth function of  $y$  and  $\tau$ ,  $h$  is decomposed as in Proposition 10.8, and  $u'$  decays faster than the leading term.

*Proof.* Let  $v(\sigma) = \text{Sp}(\sigma)\phi = (2\pi i)^{-1}(R(\sigma + i0) - R(\sigma - i0))\phi$ . Then

$$u(t, \cdot) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_I e^{-it\sigma} (R(\sigma + i0) - R(\sigma - i0))\phi \, d\sigma.$$

Shifting the contour of integration shows that, as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $R(\sigma - i0)\phi$  has trivial asymptotics. Hence it is enough to consider

$$u(t, \cdot) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_I e^{-it\sigma} R(\sigma + i0)\phi \, d\sigma. \quad (11-5)$$

Let  $F(\sigma)$  be the FIO constructed in Theorem 3.17, which conjugates  $x^{-1}(H - \sigma)$  to normal form microlocally near the point  $q \in \text{RP}_+(\sigma)$  with  $\pi(q) = z$ . By construction,  $F(\sigma)^{-1}R(\sigma + i0)\phi$  has asymptotics (10-8) for every  $\sigma$ . Since  $F(\sigma)$  is a smooth family of FIOs, and (10-8) is a Legendre distribution associated to the zero section (that is, it is conormal at  $x = 0$  with no oscillatory factor), it follows that  $R(\sigma + i0)\phi$  itself has asymptotics

$$R(\sigma + i0)\phi = x^{-i\tilde{b} - i\kappa_j} e^{i\Phi(y, \sigma)/x} a(Y'', Y''', x, \sigma) + v', \quad (11-6)$$

where  $\Phi(\cdot, \sigma)$  is a smooth function, parametrizing the image of the zero section under the canonical relation of  $F(\sigma)$  (as in (6-18)). By assumption,  $a$  is smooth in  $\sigma$ , conormal in  $x$  and Schwartz in  $(Y'', Y''')$ . At the critical point  $z$  we have

$$\Phi(z, \sigma) = \sqrt{\sigma - V_0(z)}, \quad z = \pi(q), \quad q \in \text{Min}_+(\sigma). \quad (11-7)$$

We may substitute (11-6) into (11-5) and compute

$$u(t, \cdot) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_I e^{-it\sigma} \left( e^{i\Phi(y, \sigma)/x} a(Y'', Y''', x, \sigma) + v' \right) d\sigma, \quad (11-8)$$

exploiting the smoothness of  $\Phi$  and  $a$  in  $\sigma$ .

Let  $p \in X$  be an interior point. Then  $(R(\sigma \pm i0)\phi)(p)$  is a smooth function of  $\sigma$  by Proposition 10.8. It follows that for a fixed interior point  $p$  the integral (11-8) is rapidly decreasing as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , being the Fourier transform of a smooth, compactly supported function. Hence the asymptotics of  $u$  are trivial at af.

To investigate asymptotics at af, where  $x \rightarrow 0$ , we rewrite (11-8) as

$$u(\tau, x, Y'', Y''') = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int e^{i(-\tau\sigma + \Phi(y, \sigma))/x} \left( a(Y'', Y''', x, \sigma) + v'(Y'', Y''', x, \sigma) \right) d\sigma, \quad (11-9)$$

and apply stationary phase to the integral. We first note that for any  $w \in \partial X$  which is not a local minimum of  $V_0$ , the integrand is rapidly decreasing as  $x \rightarrow 0$  in a neighbourhood of  $(w, \sigma) \in \partial X \times I$ , uniformly in



$\sigma$ , so  $u$  is rapidly decreasing as  $x \rightarrow 0$  in a neighbourhood of  $(w, \tau) \in \text{af}$ . So we may restrict attention to a neighbourhood of  $(z, \tau) \in \text{af}$ , where  $z$  is a local minimum of  $V_0$ .

To do this we apply stationary phase to (11–9). The phase is critical when  $\tau = d_\sigma \Phi(y, \sigma)$ . Since  $\Phi$  is smooth in  $y$ , this gives

$$\tau_{\text{critical}} = d_\sigma \Phi(z, \sigma) + O(Y_i x^{r_i})$$

and, since  $a$  is Schwartz in  $Y$ , to compute the expansion of  $u$  to leading order we may drop the  $O(Y_i x^{r_i})$  terms when we substitute  $\tau = \tau_{\text{critical}}$  into  $a$  in (11–8). Since  $\Phi(z, \sigma)$  is given by (11–7), we may therefore take  $\tau$  in the argument of  $a$  to be given by  $\tau = d_\sigma \Phi(z, \sigma)$  which implies (11–4). Moreover, the Hessian of the phase function at the critical point is  $(4x)^{-1}(\sigma - V_0(z))^{-3/2} = 2x^{-1}\tau^3$ . The stationary phase lemma then gives (11–3), with  $\Psi(y, \tau) = -\tau\sigma(\tau) + \Phi(y, \sigma(\tau))$ .  $\square$

**Remark 11.2.** Equation (11–4) is just the energy equation “total energy = potential energy+ kinetic energy” at infinity, since  $1/\tau$  is the asymptotic speed. The factor  $1/4$  comes from the fact that in writing our Hamiltonian as  $\Delta + V$ , we have taken the value of mass to be  $1/2$  in our units.

**Remark 11.3.** We may *not* replace  $\Psi(y, \tau)$  with  $\Psi(z, \tau)$  in (11–3), due to the singular factor  $1/x$  in the phase. In fact, if we expand  $\Psi(y, \tau)$  in a Taylor series about  $y = z$ , written in terms of the variables  $Y_i = y_i/x^{r_i}$ , then we get an asymptotic expansion involving polynomials  $y^\alpha$  in the variables  $y_i$  multiplied by nonnegative powers  $x^r$ , where  $r = \sum \alpha_i r_i$ . We may discard all terms in the Taylor series of  $\Psi$  with  $r > 1$  since these will only contribute to the term  $u'$  decaying faster than the leading term, but we must keep all terms with  $r \leq 1$ . The number of such terms is always finite, but depends on  $\sigma - V_0(z)$  and the eigenvalues of the Hessian of  $V_0$  at  $z$ .

**11.2. Asymptotic completeness: time dependent formulation.** We see that solutions of the time dependent Schrödinger equation (at least those with initial data in  $\mathcal{A}$ ) have expansions at af which are equivalent to first spectrally resolving the initial data and looking at the expansion of the corresponding family of generalized eigenfunctions; the variable  $\sigma$  in the time-independent setting, and  $\tau$  in the time-dependent setting, play equivalent roles and are linked by (11–4). In view of this, we can recast Theorem 10.10 in time-dependent terms as follows:

**Theorem 11.4.** *Let  $I$  and  $\mathcal{A}_I$  be as in Theorem 11.1, let  $u_0 \in \mathcal{A}_I$  and let  $u$  be the solution of the time dependent Schrödinger Equation (11–1) with initial data  $u_0$ . For a given local minimum  $z$  of  $V_0$ , let  $\text{Min}_+(I)$  be the associated family of outgoing radial points, and let  $\tilde{Q} = \sum_j \tilde{Q}_j$ ,  $\tilde{b}$  and  $\kappa_j$  be as in Proposition 6.3. The map*

$$\mathcal{A}_I \ni u_0 \mapsto \bigoplus_{q \in \text{Min}_+(I)} \left( e^{i \log x \tilde{Q}} x^{i\tilde{b}-1/2} e^{-i\Psi(y,\tau)/x} u(x, \tau, Y'', Y''') \right) \Big|_{x=0} \tag{11–10}$$

whose existence is guaranteed by Theorem 11.1 extends uniquely by linearity and continuity to a unitary isomorphism

$$L^2 \ominus E_{\text{pp}}(H) \rightarrow \bigoplus_q L^2(\mathbb{R}_\tau^+ \times \mathbb{R}_q^{n-1}; \frac{d\tau}{2\tau^4} \otimes \omega_{q,\tau}). \tag{11–11}$$

Here  $\omega_{q,\tau}$  is the measure in (10–2) and  $\tau = \tau(q, \sigma)$  is given by (11–4).

**Remark 11.5.** The operator  $e^{i \log x \tilde{Q}}$  simply removes the factors of  $x^{-i\sigma_k}$  in the expansion (11–3), so that we can take a limit as  $x \rightarrow 0$ .

**Remark 11.6.** The measure in (11–11) should be thought of as the product of  $\tau^{-1}\omega_{q,\tau}$ , which is the measure in Proposition 10.4, tensored with the measure  $d\sigma = \tau^{-3}d\tau/2$ .

*Proof.* Let  $u_0 = \phi(I, h)$  be as in Theorem 11.1. We may take the  $L^2$  norm of (11–3) for a fixed  $t$ , and take the limit as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . To do this, we write  $x = \tau/t$  and integrate with respect to the measure on  $X$  which is given by  $t\tau^{-2}x^{-1-2\text{Im}\bar{b}}dYd\tau$ . If we just look at the principal term in (11–3) then the powers of  $t$  cancel exactly and we get

$$\sum_q \int \frac{1}{2\pi} \left| \sum_j w_j(Y'', \sigma(\tau))v_j(Y''', \sigma(\tau)) \right|^2 dY \frac{d\tau}{2\tau^4}. \tag{11–12}$$

Since  $\omega_{q,\sigma} = \tau^{-1}dY$ , and  $d\sigma = \tau^{-3}d\tau/2$  using (11–4), this is given by

$$\frac{1}{2\pi} \sum_q \int_I 2\sqrt{\sigma - V_0(z)} \left| \sum_j w_j(Y'', \sigma)v_j(Y''', \sigma) \right|^2 d\omega_{q,\sigma} d\sigma.$$

The expression  $\sum_j w_j v_j$  is equal to

$$M_+(q, \sigma)((R(\sigma + i0) - R(\sigma - i0))u_0,$$

or equivalently  $2\pi i M_+(q, \sigma) \text{Sp}(\sigma)u_0$ . Also, the norm on  $\bigoplus_q L^2(\mathbb{R}^{n-1})$  is given by (10–2). So we get, using Theorems 10.1 and 10.10,

$$(11–12) = 2\pi \sum_q \int_I \|M_+(q, \sigma) \text{Sp}(\sigma)u_0\|^2 d\sigma = \|u_0\|_{L^2}^2.$$

But (11–12) is precisely the square of the norm of the right hand side of (11–10). So we have established the conclusion of the theorem for the principal term in the asymptotic expansion in (11–3). Since the remainder term  $u'$  decays faster than the principal term, the  $L^2$  norm of  $u'(\cdot, t)$  goes to zero as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , so the proof is complete.  $\square$

From Theorem 11.4 we can deduce the following result first proved by Herbst and Skibsted, using a direct method involving the uncertainty principle, rather than proceeding via the structure of generalized eigenfunctions as here.

**Corollary 11.7** (Absence of  $L^2$  channels at nonminimal critical points). *Let  $\chi \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(X)$  vanish in a neighbourhood of the local minima of  $V_0$  on  $\partial X$ . Let  $u$  be the solution of (11–1) on  $X \times \mathbb{R}$  with initial value  $u_0 \in L^2(X) \ominus E_{\text{pp}}(H)$ . Then*

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \|\chi u(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2(X)} \rightarrow 0. \tag{11–13}$$

*Proof.* We may assume that  $0 \leq \chi \leq 1$  without loss of generality.

Let  $\epsilon > 0$  be given. Then by density of  $\mathcal{A}$  in  $L^2 \ominus E_{\text{pp}}(H)$ , we can find  $\phi \in \mathcal{A}$ , with  $\phi$  equal to a sum of a finite number of  $\phi_j(I_j, h_j) \in \mathcal{A}_{I_j}$ , such that  $\|u_0 - \phi\|_{L^2} < \epsilon$ . Without loss of generality we may assume that all the  $I_j$  are disjoint. Let  $u'$  be the solution with initial condition  $\phi$ . By direct calculation from (11–3) we find that

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \|(1 - \chi)u'(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}^2 = \sum_j \int_I \sqrt{\sigma - V_0(\pi(q))} \|h_j\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^{n-1})}^2 d\sigma,$$

which by Theorem 10.10 is equal to  $\|\phi\|_{L^2}^2$ . But by unitarity of  $e^{-itH}$ , we have

$$\|u'(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}^2 = \|\phi\|_{L^2}^2 \text{ for each } t.$$

Since  $0 \leq \chi \leq 1$ , an elementary calculation shows that  $\|(1 - \chi)u'\|_{L^2}^2 + \|\chi u'\|_{L^2}^2 \leq \|u'\|_{L^2}^2$ , which implies

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \|\chi u'(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2}^2 = 0.$$

So (11–13) is true for  $u'$ . On the other hand,

$$\limsup_{t \rightarrow \infty} \|\chi(u(t, \cdot) - u'(t, \cdot))\|_{L^2} \leq \epsilon,$$

so  $\limsup_{t \rightarrow \infty} \|\chi u(t, \cdot)\|_{L^2} \leq \epsilon$ . Since this is true for every  $\epsilon > 0$ , the result follows.  $\square$

**11.3. Comparison with results of Herbst–Skibsted.** We first show that our results on the asymptotics of the solutions to the time-dependent Equation (11–1) are consistent with the comparison dynamics of Herbst–Skibsted [2004]. Herbst and Skibsted define comparison dynamics, that is, a family of unitary operators  $U_0(t)$  for a given local minimum of  $V_0$  and for either a “low energy” range or a “high energy” range which depends on the behaviour of the  $r_i(\sigma)$  from Lemma 2.7. It has the property that the strong limit

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} e^{itH} U_0(t)$$

exists in  $L^2(X)$  and defines a unitary wave operator.

Let us compare their results on long-time asymptotics with ours. For simplicity, we consider the “very low energy” energy interval in which all of the exponents  $r_i$  are complex, with real part  $1/2$  (this is “below the Hessian threshold”, in our terminology). For simplicity we also assume, as do Herbst and Skibsted, that  $V_0(z) = 0$ . In this case, the exponent  $-i\tilde{b}$  in (11–3) is equal to  $(n - 1)/4$ , and there are no  $Y''$  variables. Moreover, the function  $\Phi(y, \sigma)$  is equal to  $\sqrt{\sigma}(1 - |y|^2/4)$  (see [Hassell et al. 2004, Section 7], particularly (7.22) and (7.23) for the case  $n = 2$ ), which implies that  $\Psi(y, \tau) = (1 - |y|^2/4)/\tau$ . If we substitute  $x = \tau/t$  into (11–3) then we get

$$c \sum_j t^{-(n-1)/4-1/2+i\kappa_j} \tau^{(n-1)/4+1-i\kappa_j} e^{it(1-|y|^2/4)/\tau^2} w_j(\tau) v_j(Y''', \tau).$$

To compare this with Herbst and Skibsted’s comparison dynamics, we adopt their notation: we decompose the variable  $\underline{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  as  $\underline{x} = (x_1, x^\perp)$  where  $(1, 0, \dots, 0)$  is the point on the sphere at infinity where  $V_0$  has a local minimum, and  $x^\perp$  are  $n - 1$  orthogonal linear coordinates. We can identify our boundary defining function  $x$  with  $1/x_1$ . Thus  $\tau = t/x_1$  and  $y = x^\perp/x_1$ , and we can write the expression above as

$$c \sum_j t^{-(n-1)/4-1/2+i\kappa_j} \tau^{(n-1)/4+1-i\kappa_j} e^{it/\tau^2} e^{i|x^\perp|^2/4t} w_j(\tau) v_j(x^\perp/\sqrt{x_1}, \tau). \tag{11–14}$$

In this very low-energy case the Herbst–Skibsted comparison dynamics is given explicitly by

$$U_0(t) = S_{t^{-1/2}} e^{i|x^\perp|^2/4} e^{-itp_1^2/2} e^{-i(\log t)H_2} \widehat{U}_0,$$

where the operator  $p_i$  stands for  $D_{x_i} = -i\partial_{x_i}$ ,  $S_{t^{-1/2}}$  is the scaling

$$S_{t^{-1/2}} f(x_1, x^\perp) = t^{-(n-1)/4} f(x_1, t^{-1/2} x^\perp),$$

the operator  $H_2$  is given by

$$H_2 = \frac{1}{2}|p^\perp|^2 + \frac{1}{2}\langle x^\perp, (p_1^{-2}V^{(2)} - \text{Id}/4)x^\perp \rangle$$

(where  $V^{(2)}$  is the Hessian of  $V_0$  at the critical point), and finally  $\widehat{U}_0$  is an arbitrary unitary operator.

To compare this to our long-time asymptotic expansion (11–14), it is convenient to take  $\widehat{U}_0$  to be inverse Fourier transform mapping functions of  $p_1$  to functions of  $x_1$ . Then  $H_2$  is a family of harmonic oscillators parametrized by  $p_1$ . The operator  $e^{-itp_1^2/2}$  acting on  $W(p_1, x^\perp)$  then takes the form

$$(2\pi)^{-1/2} \int e^{ix_1 p_1} e^{-itp_1^2/2} W(p_1, x^\perp) dp_1$$

and by stationary phase we see that the large  $t$  asymptotics of this operation is given by

$$W(p_1, x^\perp) \mapsto t^{-1/2} e^{ix_1^2/2t} W\left(\frac{x_1}{t}, x^\perp\right).$$

Let us expand  $W(p_1, x^\perp)$  in eigenfunctions of the operator  $H_2 = H_2(p_1)$  as

$$W(p_1, x^\perp) = \sum_j \omega_j(p_1) \chi_j(x^\perp, p_1),$$

and write  $\tau$  for  $t/x_1$ . A computation shows that  $S_{t^{-1/2}} H_2 S_{t^{1/2}}$  is equal to  $p_1^{-1} \widetilde{Q}$  where  $\widetilde{Q}$  is the operator from (6–7). The comparison dynamics therefore maps  $W$  to

$$t^{-(n-1)/4-1/2} e^{it/2\tau^2} e^{-i|x^\perp|^2/4t} \sum_j t^{i\kappa_j} \omega_j(\tau^{-1}) \chi_j(x^\perp/\sqrt{t}, \tau^{-1}).$$

This agrees with (11–14), if we identify  $w_j(\tau)$  with  $\tau^{-1} \omega_j(\tau^{-1})$ , and  $v_j(Y''', \tau)$  with  $\chi_j(Y''' \tau^{-1/2}, \tau^{-1})$ . (The imaginary powers of  $\tau$  simply amount to a different choice of normalized eigenfunction  $v_j$ . Also there are some discrepancies of factors of 1/2 since Herbst–Skibsted’s operator is *half* the Laplacian plus  $V$ .) Thus, the two expansions are consistent.

In the high energy regime, it is easier to check the agreement of the two expansions. In this case, there are no  $Y'''$  variables. The Herbst–Skibsted comparison dynamics takes the form

$$\widetilde{U}_0(t) f(\underline{x}) = e^{iS(t, \underline{x})} J(t, \underline{x})^{1/2} f(k(t, \underline{x}), w(t, \underline{x})),$$

where  $S(t, \underline{x})$  is a solution to the eikonal equation

$$\partial_t S(t, \underline{x}) + \frac{1}{2} |\nabla_{\underline{x}} S(t, \underline{x})|^2 + V(\underline{x}) = 0$$

and  $k(t, \underline{x})$  is the energy function

$$\frac{1}{2} k^2 = \frac{1}{2} |\nabla_{\underline{x}} S(t, \underline{x})|^2 + V(\underline{x}).$$

To make the link with our long time expansion (11–3), we begin by showing that  $S$  corresponds to our phase function  $\Psi/x$ . Indeed,  $\Psi$  is obtained from  $\Phi$ , the phase function in (11–6) by performing stationary phase as in (11–9). The phase function  $\Phi/x$  parametrizes a Legendrian submanifold which is the image of the zero section under the FIO  $F$  in Remark 6.8. Since the zero section is the flowout from the critical point in the eigendirections (of the linearized flow) with eigenvalues  $\lambda r_i$  (as opposed to  $\lambda(1 - r_i)$ ), as can be computed easily from (2–7), the same is true of the Legendrian submanifold parametrized by  $\Phi/x$ ;

in particular, it corresponds precisely to Herbst–Skibsted’s Lagrangian submanifold  $\mathcal{M}_k$  parametrized by  $\bar{S}$  (using the correspondence between conic Lagrangian submanifolds and Legendre manifolds “at infinity”); see [Herbst and Skibsted 2004, Theorem 2.1]. Then the way  $\Psi/x$  is obtained from  $\Phi/x$  is exactly the same as the Legendre transform by which Herbst–Skibsted obtain  $S$  from  $\bar{S}$  (see [Herbst and Skibsted 2004, page 559]), with  $k^2$  corresponding to our  $\sigma$  and  $S$  corresponds to our  $\Psi$ . Moreover, from [Herbst and Skibsted 2004, page 561], we have

$$w_j = t^{-\beta_j(k)} k^{1-\beta_j(k)} (1 + 2\beta_j(k)) u_j + O(u_j |u|).$$

In our notation,  $\beta_j(k) = -r_j$ ,  $u_j = y_j$  and  $t = \tau/x$ . Setting  $Y_j'' = y_j x^{-r_j}$  as above, we get

$$w_j = g_j(k) Y_j'' + O(x^{\min r_j}).$$

Thus, up to an energy-dependent factor  $g_j(k)$ , the coordinate  $w$  in Herbst–Skibsted is equivalent to our  $Y''$ . The asymptotics (11–3) in this regime (where now there are no  $Y'''$  variables, hence no sum over  $j$ ) thus take the form

$$c x^{-i\tilde{b}+1/2} \tau^{-3/2} e^{i\Psi(y, \sigma(\tau))/x} w(Y'', \sigma)$$

which is consistent with the Herbst–Skibsted comparison dynamics.

It is a little more difficult to make the link between our asymptotics and Herbst–Skibsted’s in the low-energy regime where not all the  $r_i$  have real part equal to  $1/2$ , but the real parts are all at least  $1/3$ . We can, however, offer some explanation as to why the low-energy comparison dynamics fails to work *above* this energy level. Referring to Remark 11.3, above this energy we cannot approximate the function  $\Psi(y, \sigma(\tau))$  by its quadratic approximation; we need to include at least cubic terms in the Taylor series of  $\Psi$  at  $y = z$ . These in turn depend on the cubic terms in the Taylor series for  $V_0$  at  $z$ . The Herbst–Skibsted low energy comparison dynamics neglects these terms. It cannot therefore be expected to provide an accurate approximation to the long-time asymptotics of solutions to (11–1), since we have seen that in (11–3) that one *cannot* replace  $\Psi$  by its quadratic approximation.

We emphasize that our long time asymptotic formula (11–3) works for all energies (except for the discrete set of eigenvalues, effectively resonant energies and Hessian thresholds), whereas in Herbst and Skibsted’s results there is a gap of “intermediate energies” in which they do not give any comparison dynamics. The formula (11–3) correctly interpolates between low energies, below the Hessian threshold, and high energies, where all the exponents  $r_i$  are real.

### Appendix: Errata for [Hassell et al. 2004]

**A.1. Correction to the proof of Proposition 6.7.** With the stated assumptions, the proof of Proposition 6.7 in Part I needs to be two-step, and the conclusion is slightly modified, although this does not affect any of its applications, in particular Proposition 6.9 of Part I, which is its only use in that paper. Below equation numbers of the form (6.xx) refer to Part I, while equation numbers of the form (A.xx) refer to this appendix.

The error in the proof arises from the microlocalizers  $Q \in \Psi_{sc}^{-\infty, 0}(X)$  considered there, in (6.27), so we recall the assumptions on it. With  $O_m$  a neighborhood of  $q$  as (6.24) or (6.25), we assume that

$$\mathrm{WF}'_{\mathrm{sc}}(Q) \subset O_m \quad q \notin \mathrm{WF}'_{\mathrm{sc}}(\mathrm{Id} - Q),$$

$$i[Q^*Q, P - \sigma] = x^{1/2}(\tilde{B}^*\tilde{B} + \tilde{G})x^{1/2} + x^{1/2}\tilde{F}x^{1/2},$$

where  $\tilde{B}, \tilde{F} \in \Psi_{\mathrm{sc}}^{0,0}(O), \tilde{G} \in \Psi_{\mathrm{sc}}^{0,1}(X), q \notin \mathrm{WF}'_{\mathrm{sc}}(\tilde{F}),$  (A.1)

and in addition,  $\tilde{F}$  satisfies  $\mathrm{WF}'_{\mathrm{sc}}(\tilde{F}) \subset \{\nu < \nu(q)\}$ . (This condition on  $\tilde{F}$  ensures that  $\mathrm{WF}'_{\mathrm{sc}}(\tilde{F}) \cap \mathrm{WF}_{\mathrm{sc}}(u) = \emptyset$  for the application in Section 9 of Part I.)

In fact, due to the two step nature of the proof below, we also need another microlocalizer  $Q' \in \Psi_{\mathrm{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(X)$  satisfying analogous assumptions with  $\tilde{B}$ , etc., replaced by  $\tilde{B}'$ , etc.,

$$i[(Q')^*Q', P - \sigma] = x^{1/2}((\tilde{B}')^*\tilde{B}' + \tilde{G}')x^{1/2} + x^{1/2}\tilde{F}'x^{1/2}, \quad (\text{A.2})$$

with properties analogous to (A.1), except that  $\mathrm{WF}'_{\mathrm{sc}}(Q') \subset O'_m$ , etc., where  $O'_m$  is the elliptic set of  $Q'$ .

The following is a slightly modified version of Proposition A.1, in that we need to assume the existence of  $Q'$  as above, and that the conclusion is on the elliptic set of  $Q'$  rather than that of  $Q$ .

**Proposition A.1** (Modified version of [Hassell et al. 2004, Proposition 6.7]). *Suppose that  $m > 0, s < -1/2, q \in \mathrm{RP}_+(\sigma), \sigma \notin \mathrm{Cv}(V)$ , either (6.14) or (6.15) hold, and let  $O_m$  be as in (6.24) (or (6.25)). Suppose that  $u \in I_{\mathrm{sc}}^{(s),m-1}(O_m, \mathcal{M}), \mathrm{WF}_{\mathrm{sc}}((P - \sigma)u) \cap O_m = \emptyset$  and that there exists  $Q, Q' \in \Psi_{\mathrm{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(O_m)$  elliptic at  $q$  that satisfies (A.1)–(A.2) with  $\mathrm{WF}'_{\mathrm{sc}}(\tilde{F}) \cap \mathrm{WF}_{\mathrm{sc}}(u) = \emptyset, \mathrm{WF}'_{\mathrm{sc}}(\tilde{F}') \cap \mathrm{WF}_{\mathrm{sc}}(u) = \emptyset$ . Then  $u \in I_{\mathrm{sc}}^{(s),m}(O'', \mathcal{M})$  where  $O''$  is the elliptic set of  $Q'$ .*

The issue with the argument presented in the proof of Proposition 6.7 is that it gains a whole extra factor in the module at once:  $u \in I_{\mathrm{sc}}^{(s),m-1}(O_m, \mathcal{M})$ , is assumed, and  $u \in I_{\mathrm{sc}}^{(s),m}(O', \mathcal{M})$  is concluded. Now, the novel part of such a statement, corresponding to the terms arising from factors from the module  $\mathcal{M} \subset \Psi_{\mathrm{sc}}^{-\infty,-1}(X)$ , is properly dealt with in the (erroneous) proof presented in Part I. However, there is a problem with the microlocalizer  $Q$  unless (6.27) is strengthened to make the error term  $\tilde{G}$  have two orders higher decay than the main term, that is, to make it order  $(0, 2)$ . This is of course the same issue as what makes one gain  $1/2$  order at a time usually in positive commutator proofs for the propagation of singularities for operators of real principal type. Factors from the module  $\mathcal{M}$  are fine because they essentially get reproduced by the commutator with  $P - \sigma$ . The problem is that  $\tilde{G}$  cannot be written as a multiple of  $Q$ , in general. Technically, this shows up in (6.29) where  $\epsilon \|A_{\alpha,s}u'\|^2$  cannot be absorbed in the left hand side for it does not have a factor of  $Q$ . (One needs to remember that  $Au'$  is the vector of  $QA_{\alpha,s}u'$ , so all terms arising by commutators with the module generators are OK, the only issue is the microlocalizer  $Q$ .)

This error is easily remedied by a two-step argument. The cost of this is that the open set on which we conclude regularity is shrunk slightly from the elliptic set of  $Q$  to that of  $Q'$ , although in relevant situations one can usually recover the original statement of Proposition 6.7 easily as in Proposition 6.9. First, the argument given in the proof of Proposition 6.7 proves the following lemma.

**Lemma A.2.** *Suppose that  $m > 0, r < -1/2, q \in \mathrm{RP}_+(\sigma), \sigma \notin \mathrm{Cv}(V)$ , either (6.14) or (6.15) hold, and let  $O_m$  be as in (6.24) (or (6.25)). Suppose that  $u \in I_{\mathrm{sc}}^{(r),m-1}(O_m, \mathcal{M}), \mathrm{WF}_{\mathrm{sc}}((P - \sigma)u) \cap O_m = \emptyset$  and that there exists  $Q \in \Psi_{\mathrm{sc}}^{-\infty,0}(O_m)$  elliptic at  $q$  that satisfies (A.1) with  $\mathrm{WF}'_{\mathrm{sc}}(\tilde{F}) \cap \mathrm{WF}_{\mathrm{sc}}(u) = \emptyset$ . Then  $u \in I_{\mathrm{sc}}^{(r-1/2),m}(O', \mathcal{M})$  where  $O'$  is the elliptic set of  $Q$ .*

Notice that under the same hypothesis as Proposition A.1, this lemma proves regularity under  $\mathcal{M}^m$  (as Proposition A.1), but does so at the cost of losing half an order of decay:  $u \in I_{\text{sc}}^{(r-1/2),m}(O', \mathcal{M})$  rather than  $u \in I_{\text{sc}}^{(r),m}(O', \mathcal{M})$ .

*Proof of Lemma A.2.* With the notation of the proof of Proposition 6.7 of Part I, let  $s = r - 1/2$  (so in particular  $s < -1/2$ ), let  $A_{\alpha,s}$ , etc., be as there. Then the pairing  $\langle A_{\alpha,s}u', \tilde{G}A_{\alpha,s}u' \rangle$  (where  $u'$  will be regularizations of  $u$ ) is controlled by the a priori control of  $u'$  in  $I_{\text{sc}}^{(s+1/2),m-1}(O_m, \mathcal{M}) = I_{\text{sc}}^{(r),m-1}(O_m, \mathcal{M})$ . Indeed,  $x^{1/2}A_{\alpha,s}$  and  $x^{-1/2}\tilde{G}A_{\alpha,s}$  are both the product of an element of  $\Psi_{\text{sc}}^{(0,-s+1/2)}(O_m)$  and  $m$  factors in the module  $\mathcal{M} \subset \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{0,-1}(O_m)$ , hence in particular can be thought of (by combining the factor from  $\Psi_{\text{sc}}^{(0,-s+1/2)}(O_m)$  with a factor from  $\mathcal{M}$ ) as the product of an element of  $\Psi_{\text{sc}}^{(0,-s-1/2)}(O_m)$  with  $m - 1$  factors in  $\mathcal{M}$ . So this gives  $u \in I_{\text{sc}}^{(s),m}(O', \mathcal{M}) = I_{\text{sc}}^{(r-1/2),m}(O', \mathcal{M})$ , proving the lemma.  $\square$

*Proof of Proposition A.1.* Lemma A.2 shows that  $u \in I_{\text{sc}}^{(s-1/2),m}(O', \mathcal{M})$  with  $O'$  as in Lemma A.2. With this additional knowledge, the argument stated in the proof of Proposition 6.7 of Part I, applied with the same  $s$ , goes through. (But now we apply it with  $Q$  replaced by  $Q'$ , etc!) Indeed, the pairing  $\langle A_{\alpha,s}u', \tilde{G}'A_{\alpha,s}u' \rangle$  is controlled by the a priori information, as  $x^{1/2}A_{\alpha,s}u' = A_{\alpha,s-1/2}u'$ , so it is controlled in  $L^2$  if  $u'$  is a priori controlled in  $I_{\text{sc}}^{(s-1/2),m}(O', \mathcal{M})$  (which we just have proved), and a similar conclusion holds for  $x^{-1/2}\tilde{G}'A_{\alpha,s}u'$  as  $x^{-1/2}\tilde{G}' \in \Psi_{\text{sc}}^{0,1/2}(X)$  just like  $x^{1/2}$  is. Thus,  $u \in I_{\text{sc}}^{(s),m}(O'', \mathcal{M})$ , with  $O''$  the elliptic set of  $Q'$ , as desired. This finishes the proof.  $\square$

**A.2. Correction to Proposition 9.4.** The proof of Proposition 9.4 in Part I contains the statement “Since  $r_1 < 0$ , the vector field  $x\partial_x + r_1y\partial_y$  is nonresonant”, which is false. To correct the proof, that statement should be deleted and the sentence following it replaced by: “By a change of coordinates  $x' = a(y)x$ ,  $y' = b(y)y$ , where  $a, b \in C^\infty$  near  $y = 0$  satisfy the ODEs

$$a'(y) = -\frac{a(y)F(y)}{r_1 + yG(y)}, \quad b'(y) = -\frac{b(y)}{r_1 + yG(y)}, \quad a(0) = b(0) = 1$$

the  $F$  and  $G$  terms are eliminated and the vector field becomes

$$-\frac{2\tilde{v}}{a(y)}\left(\left((x')^2D_{x'}\right) + r_1y(x'D_{y'})\right),$$

modulo terms in  $x^2\tilde{\mathcal{M}}^2$  and subprincipal terms.” This proves the proposition apart from the prefactor of  $a(y)^{-1}$  in front of  $\tilde{P}_0$  which is irrelevant for the application of this proposition.

Of course, Proposition 9.4 also follows by applying the results of the present paper, noting that the case considered there is effectively nonresonant.

### Acknowledgement

We thank an anonymous referee for helpful comments and for pointing out some errors in the first version of this manuscript.

### References

[Agmon et al. 1999] S. Agmon, J. Cruz-Uribe, and I. Herbst, “Generalized Fourier transform for Schrödinger operators with potentials of order zero”, *J. Funct. Anal.* **167**:2 (1999), 345–369. MR 2000h:35032 Zbl 0937.35033

- [Bony et al. 2007] J.-F. Bony, S. Fujiié, T. Ramond, and M. Zerzeri, “Microlocal kernel of pseudodifferential operators at a hyperbolic fixed point”, *J. Funct. Anal.* **252**:1 (2007), 68–125. MR 2357351 Zbl 05214703
- [Duistermaat and Hörmander 1972] J. J. Duistermaat and L. Hörmander, “Fourier integral operators. II”, *Acta Math.* **128**:3-4 (1972), 183–269. MR 52 #9300 Zbl 0246.47059
- [Guillemin and Schaeffer 1977] V. Guillemin and D. Schaeffer, “On a certain class of Fuchsian partial differential equations”, *Duke Math. J.* **44**:1 (1977), 157–199. MR 55 #3504 Zbl 0356.35080
- [Hassell and Vasy 1999] A. Hassell and A. Vasy, “The spectral projections and the resolvent for scattering metrics”, *J. Anal. Math.* **79** (1999), 241–298. MR 2001d:58034 Zbl 0981.58025
- [Hassell and Vasy 2001] A. Hassell and A. Vasy, “The resolvent for Laplace-type operators on asymptotically conic spaces”, *Ann. Inst. Fourier (Grenoble)* **51**:5 (2001), 1299–1346. MR 2002i:58037
- [Hassell et al. 2001] A. Hassell, R. Melrose, and A. Vasy, “Spectral and scattering theory for symbolic potentials of order zero”, pp. XIII–1–21 in *Séminaire Équations aux Dérivées Partielles, 2000–2001*, École Polytech., Palaiseau, 2001. MR 2002i:35142 Zbl 1063.35126
- [Hassell et al. 2004] A. Hassell, R. Melrose, and A. Vasy, “Spectral and scattering theory for symbolic potentials of order zero”, *Adv. Math.* **181**:1 (2004), 1–87. MR 2005b:58048 Zbl 1038.35085
- [Herbst 1991] I. W. Herbst, “Spectral and scattering theory for Schrödinger operators with potentials independent of  $|x|$ ”, *Amer. J. Math.* **113**:3 (1991), 509–565. MR 92k:35069 Zbl 0732.35063
- [Herbst and Skibsted 1999] I. Herbst and E. Skibsted, “Quantum scattering for homogeneous of degree zero potentials: Absence of channels at local maxima and saddle points”, Technical report, Center for Math. Physics and Stocastics, Århus, 1999, Available at <http://www.maphysto.dk/cgi-bin/gp.cgi?publ=126>.
- [Herbst and Skibsted 2004] I. Herbst and E. Skibsted, “Quantum scattering for potentials independent of  $|x|$ : asymptotic completeness for high and low energies”, *Comm. Partial Differential Equations* **29**:3-4 (2004), 547–610. MR 2005m:81331 Zbl 1064.35128
- [Herbst and Skibsted 2008] I. Herbst and E. Skibsted, “Absence of quantum states corresponding to unstable classical channels”, *Ann. Henri Poincaré* **9**:3 (2008), 509–552. MR 2419770 Zbl 1141.81029
- [Hörmander 1971] L. Hörmander, “On the existence and the regularity of solutions of linear pseudo-differential equations”, *Enseignement Math. (2)* **17** (1971), 99–163. MR 48 #9458 Zbl 0224.35085
- [Melrose 1994] R. B. Melrose, “Spectral and scattering theory for the Laplacian on asymptotically Euclidian spaces”, pp. 85–130 in *Spectral and scattering theory* (Sanda, 1992), edited by M. Ikawa, Lecture Notes in Pure and Appl. Math. **161**, Dekker, New York, 1994. MR 95k:58168 Zbl 0837.35107
- [Melrose and Zworski 1996] R. Melrose and M. Zworski, “Scattering metrics and geodesic flow at infinity”, *Invent. Math.* **124**:1-3 (1996), 389–436. MR 96k:58230 Zbl 0855.58058
- [Nelson 1969] E. Nelson, *Topics in dynamics, I: Flows*, Princeton University Press, Princeton, N.J., 1969. MR 43 #8091 Zbl 0197.10702

Received 7 Jan 2008. Revised 12 Sep 2008. Accepted 13 Oct 2008.

ANDREW HASSELL: [hassell@maths.anu.edu.au](mailto:hassell@maths.anu.edu.au)

Department of Mathematics, Australian National University, Canberra ACT 0200, Australia  
<http://www.maths.anu.edu.au/~hassell/index.html>

RICHARD MELROSE: [rbm@math.mit.edu](mailto:rbm@math.mit.edu)

Department of Mathematics, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Cambridge MA 02139-4307, United States  
<http://www-math.mit.edu/~rbm/rbm-home.html>

ANDRÁS VASY: [andras@math.stanford.edu](mailto:andras@math.stanford.edu)

Department of Mathematics, Stanford University, Stanford, CA 94305-2125, United States  
<http://math.stanford.edu/~andras/>